Fire Protection Flash MCU

BA45F5241

Revision: V1.00 Date: July 03, 2020

www.holtek.com

Table of Contents

Features

CPU Features

- Operating Voltage
  - f_{SYS}=2MHz: 2.2V~5.5V
  - f_{SYS}=4MHz: 2.2V~5.5V
  - f_{SYS}=8MHz: 2.2V~5.5V
- Up to 0.5μs instruction cycle with 8MHz system clock at V_{DD}=5V
- Power down and wake-up functions to reduce power consumption
- Oscillator types
  - Internal High Speed 2/4/8MHz RC – HIRC
  - Internal Low Speed 32kHz RC – LIRC
- Multi-mode operation: FAST, SLOW, IDLE and SLEEP
- Fully integrated internal oscillators require no external components
- All instructions executed in 1~3 instruction cycles
- Table read instructions
- 115 powerful instructions
- 8-level subroutine nesting
- Bit manipulation instruction

Peripheral Features

- Flash Program Memory: 4K×16
- RAM Data Memory: 256×8
- True EEPROM Memory: 64×8
- Watchdog Timer function
- Up to 18 bidirectional I/O lines
- Two external interrupt lines shared with I/O pins
- Programmable I/O port source current for LED applications
- Power Line Transceiver including two Comparators, one Operational Amplifier and three D/A Converters
- Multiple Timer Modules for time measure, input capture, compare match output, PWM output or single pulse output function
- Dual Time-Base functions for generation of fixed time interrupt signals
- Fully-duplex / Half-duplex Universal Asynchronous Receiver and Transmitter Interface – UART
- 4 external channel 10-bit resolution A/D converter with Internal Reference Voltage V_{BG}
- Low Voltage Reset function
- Low Voltage Detect function
- Package types: 16-pin NSOP, 20-pin SSOP

General Description

The BA45F5241 is a Flash Memory A/D type 8-bit high performance RISC architecture microcontroller especially designed for fire protection applications.

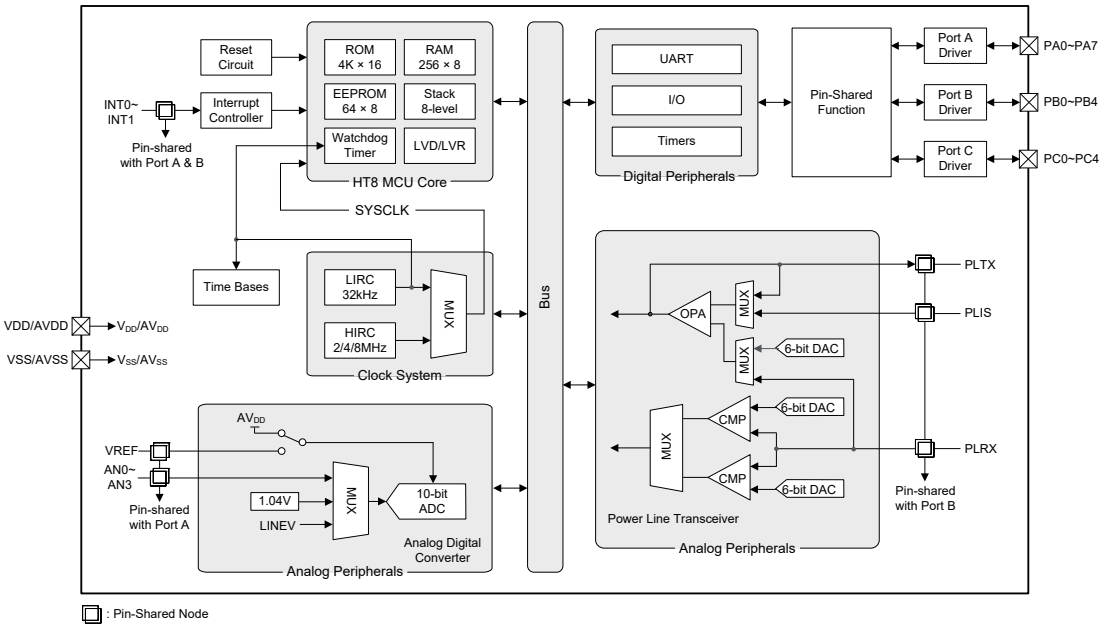
For memory features, the Flash Memory offers users the convenience of multi-programming features. Other memory includes an area of RAM Data Memory as well as an area of true EEPROM memory for storage of non-volatile data such as serial numbers, calibration data etc.

Analog features include a multi-channel Analog to Digital converter and a Power Line Transceiver including two Comparators, one Operational Amplifier and three D/A Converters. With regard to internal timers, the device includes multiple and extremely flexible Timer Modules providing functions for timing, pulse generation and PWM output operations. Communication with the outside world is catered for by including a fully integrated UART interface function, a popular interface which provides designers with a means of easy communication with external peripheral hardware. Protective features such as an internal Watchdog Timer, Low Voltage Reset and Low Voltage Detector coupled with excellent noise immunity and ESD protection ensure that reliable operation is maintained in hostile electrical environments.

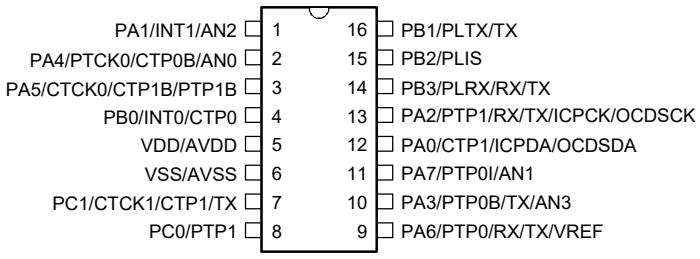
The device also includes fully integrated high and low speed oscillators which require no external components for their implementation. The ability to operate and switch dynamically between a range of operating modes using different clock sources gives users the ability to optimise microcontroller operation and minimise power consumption.

This device contains a programmable I/O port source current function which is used to implement LED driving function. While the inclusion of flexible I/O programming features, Time-Base functions along with many other features ensure that the device will find excellent use in the fire protection applications, such as independent temperature detecting alarms, acousto-optic alarms, emergency lights and evacuation indicator lights.

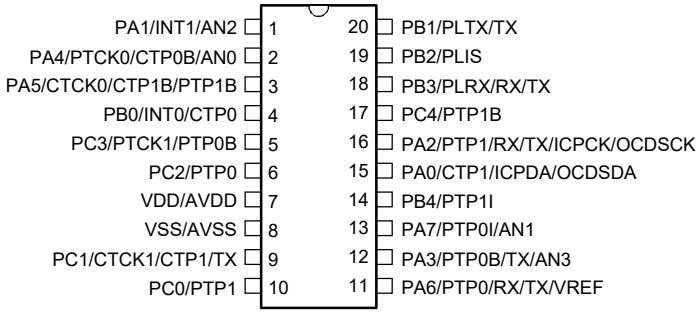
Block Diagram



Pin Assignment



BA45F5241/BA45V5241
16 NSOP-A



BA45F5241/BA45V5241
20 SSOP-A

Note: 1. If the pin-shared pin functions have multiple outputs, the desired pin-shared function is determined by the corresponding software control bits.
2. The OCDSDA and OCDSCK pins are supplied as OCDS dedicated pins and as such only available for the BA45V5241 device which is the OCDS EV chip for the BA45F5241 device.
3. For less pin-count package types there will be unbonded pins which should be properly configured to avoid unwanted current consumption resulting from floating input conditions. Refer to the "Standby Current Considerations" and "Input/Output Ports" sections.

Pin Description

The function of each pin is listed in the following table, however the details behind how each pin is configured is contained in other sections of the datasheet. As the Pin Description table shows the situation for the package type with the most pins, not all pins in the table will be available on smaller package sizes.

Pin Name	Function	OPT	I/T	O/T	Description
PA0/CTP1/ICPDA/ OCDSDA	PA0	PAPU PAWU PAS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-high and wake-up
	CTP1	PAS0	—	CMOS	CTM1 output
	ICPDA	—	ST	CMOS	ICP data/address
	OCDSDA	—	ST	CMOS	OCDS data/address, for EV chip only
PA1/INT1/AN2	PA1	PAPU PAWU PAS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-high and wake-up
	INT1	PAS0 INTC0 INTEG	ST	—	External interrupt input 1
	AN2	PAS0	AN	—	A/D Converter external input channel 2

Pin Name	Function	OPT	I/T	O/T	Description
PA2/PTP1/RX/TX/ ICPCK/OCDSCK	PA2	PAPU PAWU PAS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-high and wake-up
	PTP1	PAS0	—	CMOS	PTM1 output
	RX/TX	PAS0 IFS	ST	CMOS	UART serial data input in full-duplex communication or UART serial data input / output in single wire mode communication
	ICPCK	—	ST	—	ICP clock pin
	OCDSCK	—	ST	—	OCDS clock pin, for EV chip only
PA3/PTP0B/TX/AN3	PA3	PAPU PAWU PAS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-high and wake-up
	PTP0B	PAS0	—	CMOS	PTM0 inverted output
	TX	PAS0	—	CMOS	UART serial data output
	AN3	PAS0	AN	—	A/D Converter external input channel 3
PA4/PTCK0/CTP0B/ AN0	PA4	PAPU PAWU PAS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-high and wake-up
	PTCK0	PAS1	ST	—	PTM0 clock input or capture input
	CTP0B	PAS1	—	CMOS	CTM0 inverted output
	AN0	PAS1	AN	—	A/D Converter external input channel 0
PA5/CTCK0/CTP1B/ PTP1B	PA5	PAPU PAWU PAS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-high and wake-up
	CTCK0	PAS1	ST	—	CTM0 clock input
	CTP1B	PAS1	—	CMOS	CTM1 inverted output
	PTP1B	PAS1	—	CMOS	PTM1 inverted output
PA6/PTP0/RX/TX/ VREF	PA6	PAPU PAWU PAS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-high and wake-up
	PTP0	PAS1	—	CMOS	PTM0 output
	RX/TX	PAS1 IFS	ST	CMOS	UART serial data input in full-duplex communication or UART serial data input / output in Single Wire Mode communication
	VREF	PAS1	AN	—	A/D Converter extemal reference voltage input
PA7/PTP0I/AN1	PA7	PAPU PAWU PAS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-high and wake-up
	PTP0I	PAS1 IFS	ST	—	PTM0 capture input
	AN1	PAS1	AN	—	A/D Converter external input channel 1
PB0/INT0/CTP0	PB0	PBPU PBS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-high
	INT0	PBS0 INTC0 INTEG	ST	—	External interrupt input 0
	CTP0	PBS0	—	CMOS	CTM0 output
PB1/PLTX/TX	PB1	PBPU PBS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-high
	PLTX	PBS0	—	AN	Power Line Transceiver TX output
	TX	PBS0	—	CMOS	UART serial data output

Pin Name	Function	OPT	I/T	O/T	Description
PB2/PLIS	PB2	PBPU PBS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-high
	PLIS	PBS0	AN	—	Power Line Transceiver IS input
PB3/PLRX/RX/TX	PB3	PBPU PBS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-high
	PLRX	PBS0	AN	—	Power Line Transceiver RX input
	RX/TX	PBS0 IFS	ST	CMOS	UART serial data input in full-duplex communication or UART serial data input / output in single wire mode communication
PB4/PTP1I	PB4	PBPU	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-high
	PTP1I	—	ST	—	PTM1 capture input
PC0/PTP1	PC0	PCPU PCS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-high
	PTP1	PCS0	—	CMOS	PTM1 output
PC1/CTCK1/CTP1/TX	PC1	PCPU PCS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-high
	CTCK1	PCS0	ST	—	CTM1 clock input
	CTP1	PCS0	—	CMOS	CTM1 output
	TX	PCS0	—	CMOS	UART serial data output
PC2/PTP0	PC2	PCPU PCS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-high
	PTP0	PCS0	—	CMOS	PTM0 output
PC3/PTCK1/PTP0B	PC3	PCPU PCS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-high
	PTCK1	PCS0	ST	—	PTM1 clock input or capture input
	PTP0B	PCS0	—	CMOS	PTM0 inverted output
PC4/PTP1B	PC4	PCPU PCS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-high
	PTP1B	PCS1	—	CMOS	PTM1 inverted output
VDD/AVDD	VDD	—	PWR	—	Digital positive power supply
	AVDD	—	PWR	—	Analog positive power supply
VSS/AVSS	VSS	—	PWR	—	Digital negative power supply
	AVSS	—	PWR	—	Analog negative power supply

Legend: I/T: Input type;
O/T: Output type;
OPT: Optional by register option;
PWR: Power;
ST: Schmitt Trigger input;
CMOS: CMOS output;
AN: Analog signal.

Absolute Maximum Ratings

Supply Voltage ..... V_{SS}-0.3V to 6.0V
Input Voltage ..... V_{SS}-0.3V to V_{DD} +0.3V
Storage Temperature..... -50°C to 125°C
Operating Temperature..... -40°C to 85°C
I_{OL} Total 80mA
I_{OH} Total..... -80mA
Total Power Dissipation 500mW

Note: These are stress ratings only. Stresses exceeding the range specified under "Absolute Maximum Ratings" may cause substantial damage to the device. Functional operation of the device at other conditions beyond those listed in the specification is not implied and prolonged exposure to extreme conditions may affect devices reliability.

D.C. Characteristics

For data in the following tables, note that factors such as oscillator type, operating voltage, operating frequency, pin load conditions, temperature and program instruction type, etc., can all exert an influence on the measured values.

Operating Voltage Characteristics

Ta=-40°C~85°C

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V_{DD}	Conditions				
V_{DD}	Operating Voltage – HIRC	—	$f_{SYS}=f_{HIRC}$=2MHz	2.2	—	5.5	V
			$f_{SYS}=f_{HIRC}$=4MHz	2.2	—	5.5	
			$f_{SYS}=f_{HIRC}$=8MHz	2.2	—	5.5	
	Operating Voltage – LIRC	—	$f_{SYS}=f_{LIRC}$=32kHz	2.2	—	5.5	V

Operating Current Characteristics

Ta=-40°C~85°C

Symbol	Operating Mode	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V_{DD}	Conditions				
I_{DD}	SLOW Mode (LIRC)	2.2V	f_{SYS}=32kHz	—	8	16	μA
		3V		—	10	20	
		5V		—	30	50	
	FAST Mode (HIRC)	2.2V	f_{SYS}=2MHz	—	0.15	0.20	mA
		3V		—	0.2	0.3	
		5V		—	0.4	0.6	
		2.2V	f_{SYS}=4MHz	—	0.3	0.5	mA
		3V		—	0.4	0.6	
		5V		—	0.8	1.2	
		2.2V	f_{SYS}=8MHz	—	0.6	1.0	mA
		3V		—	0.8	1.2	
		5V		—	1.6	2.4	

Note: When using the characteristic table data, the following notes should be taken into consideration:

1. Any digital inputs are setup in a non-floating condition.

2. All measurements are taken under conditions of no load and with all peripherals in an off state.
3. There are no DC current paths.
4. All Operating Current values are measured using a continuous NOP instruction program loop.

Standby Current Characteristics

Ta=-40°C~85°C

Symbol	Standby Mode	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Max. @85°C	Unit
		V_{DD}	Conditions					
I_{STB}	SLEEP Mode	2.2V	WDT on	—	1.2	2.4	2.9	μA
		3V		—	1.5	3.0	3.6	
		5V		—	3.0	5.0	6.0	
	IDLE0 Mode (LIRC)	2.2V	f_{SUB} on	—	2.4	4.0	4.8	μA
		3V		—	3	5	6	
		5V		—	5	10	12	
	IDLE1 Mode (HIRC)	2.2V	f_{SUB} on, f_{SYS}=2MHz	—	60	120	140	μA
		3V		—	70	140	160	
		5V		—	130	260	280	
		2.2V	f_{SUB} on, f_{SYS}=4MHz	—	144	200	240	μA
		3V		—	180	250	300	
		5V		—	400	600	720	
		2.2V	f_{SUB} on, f_{SYS}=8MHz	—	288	400	480	μA
		3V		—	360	500	600	
		5V		—	600	800	960	

Note: When using the characteristic table data, the following notes should be taken into consideration:

1. Any digital inputs are setup in a non-floating condition.
2. All measurements are taken under conditions of no load and with all peripherals in an off state.
3. There are no DC current paths.
4. All Standby Current values are taken after a HALT instruction execution thus stopping all instruction execution.

A.C. Characteristics

For data in the following tables, note that factors such as oscillator type, operating voltage, operating frequency and temperature etc., can all exert an influence on the measured values.

High Speed Internal Oscillator – HIRC – Frequency Accuracy

During the program writing operation the writer will trim the HIRC oscillator at a user selected HIRC frequency and user selected voltage of either 3V or 5V.

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V_{DD}	Temp.				
f_{HIRC}	2MHz Writer Trimmed HIRC Frequency	3V/5V	25°C	-1%	2	+1%	MHz
			-20°C~60°C	-2%	2	+2%	
			-40°C~85°C	-3%	2	+3%	
		2.2V~5.5V	25°C	-6%	2	+9%	
			-40°C~85°C	-6%	2	+10%	

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V_{DD}	Temp.				
f_{HIRC}	4MHz Writer Trimmed HIRC Frequency	3V/5V	25°C	-1%	4	+1%	MHz
			-40°C~85°C	-2.5%	4	+2.5%	
		2.2V~5.5V	25°C	-2.5%	4	+2.5%	
			-40°C~85°C	-3%	4	+3%	
	8MHz Writer Trimmed HIRC Frequency	3V/5V	25°C	-1%	8	+1%	MHz
			-40°C~85°C	-10%	8	+2%	
		2.2V~5.5V	25°C	-10%	8	+3%	
			-40°C~85°C	-15%	8	+5%	

Note: 1. The 3V/5V values for V_{DD} are provided as these are the two selectable fixed voltages at which the HIRC frequency is trimmed by the writer.

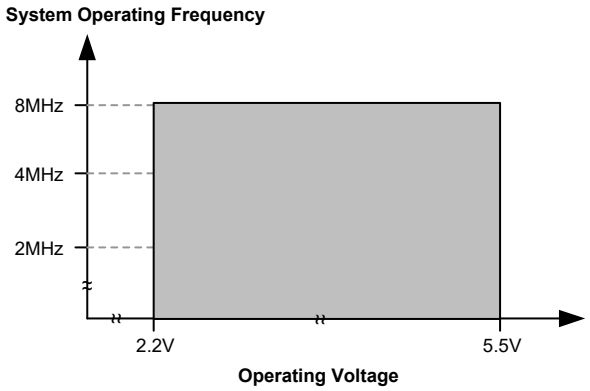
2. The row below the 3V/5V trim voltage row is provided to show the values for the full V_{DD} range operating voltage. It is recommended that the trim voltage is fixed at 3V for application voltage ranges from 2.2V to 3.6V and fixed at 5V for application voltage ranges from 3.3V to 5.5V.

3. The minimum and maximum tolerance values provided in the table are only for the frequency at which the writer trims the HIRC oscillator. After trimming at this chosen specific frequency any change in HIRC oscillator frequency using the oscillator register control bits by the application program will give a frequency tolerance to within ±20%.

Low Speed Internal Oscillator – LIRC – Frequency Accuracy

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V_{DD}	Temp.				
f_{LIRC}	LIRC Frequency	2.2V~5.5V	-40°C~85°C	-7%	32	+7%	kHz
t_{START}	LIRC Start-up Time	—	-40°C~85°C	—	—	100	μs

Operating Frequency Characteristic Curves



System Start Up Time Characteristics

Ta=-40°C~85°C

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
t_{SST}	System Start-up Time (Wake-up from Condition where f_{SYS} is off)	$f_{SYS}=f_H\sim f_H/64$, $f_H=f_{HIRC}$	—	16	—	t_{HIRC}
		$f_{SYS}=f_{SUB}=f_{LIRC}$	—	2	—	t_{LIRC}
	System Start-up Time (Wake-up from Condition where f_{SYS} is on)	$f_{SYS}=f_H\sim f_H/64$, $f_H=f_{HIRC}$	—	2	—	t_H
		$f_{SYS}=f_{SUB}=f_{LIRC}$	—	2	—	t_{SUB}
	System Speed Switch Time (FAST to SLOW Mode or SLOW to FAST Mode)	f_{HIRC} switches from off → on	—	16	—	t_{HIRC}
t_{RSTD}	System Reset Delay Time (Reset source from Power-on reset or LVR Hardware Reset)	RR_{POR}=5V/ms	42	48	54	ms
	System Reset Delay Time (WDTC Register Software Reset)	—				
	System Reset Delay Time (WDT Overflow Reset)	—	14	16	18	
t_{SRESET}	Minimum Software Reset Width to Reset	—	45	90	120	μs

Note: 1. For the System Start-up time values, whether f_{SYS} is on or off depends upon the mode type and the chosen f_{SYS} system oscillator. Details are provided in the System Operating Modes section.

2. The time units, shown by the symbols t_{HIRC} etc., are the inverse of the corresponding frequency values as provided in the frequency tables. For example, $t_{HIRC}=1/f_{HIRC}$, $t_{SYS}=1/f_{SYS}$ etc.

3. If the LIRC is used as the system clock and if it is off when in the SLEEP Mode, then an additional LIRC start up time, t_{START}, as provided in the LIRC frequency table, must be added to the t_{SST} time in the table above.

4. The System Speed Switch Time is effectively the time taken for the newly activated oscillator to start up.

Input/Output Characteristics

Ta=-40°C~85°C

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V_{DD}	Conditions				
V_{IL}	Input Low Voltage for I/O Ports	5V	—	0	—	1.5	V
		—		0	—	$0.2V_{DD}$	
V_{IH}	Input High Voltage for I/O Ports	5V	—	3.5	—	5.0	V
		—		$0.8V_{DD}$	—	V_{DD}	
I_{OL}	Sink Current for I/O Ports	3V	$V_{OL}=0.1V_{DD}$	16	32	—	mA
		5V		32	65	—	
I_{OH}	Source Current for I/O Ports	3V	$V_{OH}=0.9V_{DD}$, SLEDCn[m+1, m]=00B (n=0, 1, m=0, 2, 4, 6)	-0.7	-1.5	—	mA
		5V		-1.5	-2.9	—	
		3V	$V_{OH}=0.9V_{DD}$, SLEDCn[m+1, m]=01B (n=0, 1, m=0, 2, 4, 6)	-1.3	-2.5	—	
		5V		-2.5	-5.1	—	
		3V	$V_{OH}=0.9V_{DD}$, SLEDCn[m+1, m]=10B (n=0, 1, m=0, 2, 4, 6)	-1.8	-3.6	—	
		5V		-3.6	-7.3	—	
		3V	$V_{OH}=0.9V_{DD}$, SLEDCn[m+1, m]=11B (n=0, 1, m=0, 2, 4, 6)	-4	-8	—	
		5V		-8	-16	—	

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V_{DD}	Conditions				
R_{PH}	Pull-high Resistance for I/O Ports (1)	3V	—	20	60	100	kΩ
		5V		10	30	50	
I_{LEAK}	Input Leakage Current	5V	$V_{IN}=V_{DD}$ or $V_{IN}=V_{SS}$	—	—	±1	μA
t_{TCK}	xTM xTCKn Input Pin Minimum Pulse Width	—	—	0.3	—	—	μs
t_{TPI}	PTM0 PTP0I Input Pin Minimum Pulse Width	—	—	0.1	—	—	μs
	PTM1 PTP1I Input Pin Minimum Pulse Width			0.3	—	—	
f_{TMCLK}	PTMn Maximum Timer Clock Source Frequency	5V	—	—	—	1	f_{SYS}
t_{CPW}	PTMn Minimum Capture Pulse Width	—	—	2	—	—	t_{TMCLK}
t_{INT}	Interrupt Pin Minimum Pulse Width	—	—	10	—	—	μs

Note: 1. The R_{PH} internal pull-high resistance value is calculated by connecting to ground and enabling the input pin with a pull-high resistor and then measuring the pin current at the specified supply voltage level. Dividing the voltage by this measured current provides the R_{PH} value.

2. $t_{TMCLK}=1/f_{TMCLK}$

Memory Characteristics

Ta=-40°C~85°C, unless otherwise specified.

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V_{DD}	Conditions				
Flash Program Memory							
V_{DD}	Operating Voltage for Read	—	—	2.2	—	5.5	V
	Operating Voltage for Write	—	—	3.0	—	5.5	
t_{DEW}	Erase / Write Cycle Time	—	—	—	2	3	ms
I_{DDPGM}	Programming / Erase Current on V_{DD}	—	—	—	—	5	mA
E_P	Cell Endurance	—	—	10K	—	—	E/W
t_{RETD}	Data Retention Time	—	Ta=25°C	—	40	—	Year
Data EEPROM Memory							
V_{DD}	Operating Voltage for Read / Write	—	—	2.2	—	5.5	V
t_{EERD}	Read Cycle Time	—	—	—	—	4	t_{SYS}
t_{EEWR}	Write Cycle Time	3.0V~5.5V	—	—	4	6	ms
E_P	Cell Endurance	—	—	100K	—	—	E/W
t_{RETD}	Data Retention Time	—	Ta=25°C	—	40	—	Year
RAM Data Memory							
V_{DD}	Operating Voltage for Read / Write	—	—	2.2	—	5.5	V
V_{DR}	RAM Data Retention Voltage	—	Device in SLEEP Mode	1	—	—	V

LVD & LVR Electrical Characteristics

Ta=-40°C~85°C

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V_{DD}	Conditions				
V_{LVR}	Low Voltage Reset Voltage	—	LVR enable	-5%	2.1	+5%	V
V_{LVD}	Low Voltage Detection Voltage	—	LVD enable, voltage select 2.0V	-5%	2.0	+5%	V
			LVD enable, voltage select 2.2V		2.2		
			LVD enable, voltage select 2.4V		2.4		
			LVD enable, voltage select 2.7V		2.7		
			LVD enable, voltage select 3.0V		3.0		
			LVD enable, voltage select 3.3V		3.3		
			LVD enable, voltage select 3.6V		3.6		
			LVD enable, voltage select 4.0V		4.0		
$I_{LVRLVDBG}$	Operating Current	3V	LVD enable, LVR enable, VBGEN=0	—	—	18	μA
		5V		—	20	25	
		3V	LVD enable, LVR enable, VBGEN=1	—	—	150	μA
		5V		—	180	200	
t_{LVDS}	LVDO Stable Time	—	For LVR enable, VBGEN=0, LVD off → on	—	—	18	μs
t_{LVR}	Minimum Low Voltage Width to Reset	—	—	120	240	480	μs
t_{LVD}	Minimum Low Voltage Width to Interrupt	—	—	60	120	240	μs
I_{LVR}	Additional Current for LVR Enable	—	LVD disable, VBGEN=0	—	—	24	μA

Internal Reference Voltage Characteristics

Ta=-40°C~85°C

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V_{DD}	Conditions				
V_{BG}	Bandgap Reference Voltage	—	—	-5%	1.04	+5%	V
t_{BGS}	V_{BG} Turn On Stable Time	—	No load	—	—	150	μs
I_{BG}	Additional Current for Bandgap Reference Enable	—	LVR disable, LVD disable	—	—	180	μA

Note: The V_{BG} voltage is used as the A/D converter internal signal input.

A/D Converter Electrical Characteristics

Ta=-40°C~85°C

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V_{DD}	Conditions				
V_{ADI}	Input Voltage	—	—	0	—	V_{REF}	V
V_{REF}	Reference Voltage	—	—	2	—	V_{DD}	V
N_R	Resolution	—	—	—	—	10	Bit
DNL	Differential Non-linearity	—	V_{REF}=V_{DD}, t_{ADCK}=0.5μs	-1.5	—	1.5	LSB
INL	Integral Non-linearity	—	V_{REF}=V_{DD}, t_{ADCK}=0.5μs	-2	—	2	LSB
I_{ADC}	Additional Current for A/D Converter Enable	2.2V	No load, t_{ADCK}=0.5μs	—	300	420	μA
		3V		—	340	500	
		5V		—	500	700	
t_{ADCK}	Clock Period	—	—	0.5	—	10.0	μs
t_{ON2ST}	A/D Converter On-to-Start Time	—	—	4	—	—	μs
t_{ADC}	Conversion Time (Including A/D Sample and Hold Time)	—	—	—	14	—	t_{ADCK}

Power Line Transceiver Electrical Characteristics

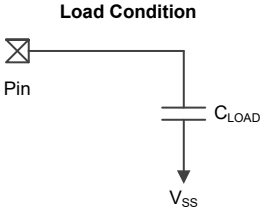
Comparator Characteristics

Ta=-40°C~85°C

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V_{DD}	Conditions				
V_{DD}	Comparator Operating Voltage	—	—	2.2	—	5.5	V
I_{CMP}	Additional Current for Comparator Enable	—	No load, PLTCmIS[1:0]=00B (m=0, 1)	—	1.7	2.7	μA
			No load, PLTCmIS[1:0]=01B (m=0, 1)	—	14	22	
			No load PLTCmIS[1:0]=10B (m=0, 1)	—	36	57	
			No load, PLTCmIS[1:0]=11B (m=0, 1)	—	58	92	
V_{OS}	Comparator Input Offset Voltage	5V	Without calibration (PLTCmOF[4:0]=10000B, m=0, 1)	-10	—	+10	mV
			With calibration	-4	—	+4	
V_{CM}	Common Mode Voltage Range	—	—	V_{SS}	—	V_{DD}-1.4	V
t_{PR}	Response Time	3V	With 10mV overdrive (2), No debounce, PLTnCmIS[1:0]=00B (m=0,1)	—	—	35	μs
		5V		—	—	35	
		3V	With 10mV overdrive (2), No debounce, PLTnCmIS[1:0]=01B (m=0,1)	—	—	2.5	
		5V		—	—	2.5	
		3V	With 10mV overdrive (2), No debounce, PLTnCmIS[1:0]=10B (m=0,1)	—	—	1	
		5V		—	—	1	
		3V	With 10mV overdrive (2), No debounce, PLTnCmIS[1:0]=11B (m=0,1)	—	—	0.7	
		5V		—	—	0.7	
V_{HYS}	Hysteresis	3V	PLTCmHYS[1:0]=00B, PLTCmIS[1:0]=00B (m=0, 1)	0	0	5	mV
		5V		0	0	5	
		3V	PLTCmHYS[1:0]=01B, PLTCmIS[1:0]=01B (m=0, 1)	20	40	60	
		5V		20	40	60	
		3V	PLTCmHYS[1:0]=10B, PLTCmIS[1:0]=10B (m=0, 1)	50	100	150	
		5V		50	100	150	
		3V	PLTCmHYS[1:0]=11B, PLTCmIS[1:0]=11B (m=0, 1)	80	160	240	
		5V		80	160	240	

Note: 1. All the above parameters are measured under condition of comparator input voltage=(V_{DD}-1.4)/2 and remain constant.

2. Load Condition: C_{LOAD}=50pF



Operational Amplifier Characteristics

Ta=-40°C~85°C

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V_{DD}	Conditions				
I_{OPA}	Operating Current	5V	PLTABW=0, no load	—	80	128	μA
			PLTABW=1, no load	—	200	320	
V_{OS}	Input Offset Voltage	5V	Without calibration (PLTAOF[5:0]=100000B)	-15	—	15	mV
			With calibration	-2	—	2	
I_{OS}	Input Offset Current	5V	V_{IN}=1/2 V_{CM}	—	1	10	nA
V_{CM}	Common Mode Voltage Range	5V	PLTABW=0 or 1	V_{SS}	—	V_{DD} - 1.4	V
PSRR	Power Supply Rejection Ratio	5V	PLTABW=0 or 1	50	70	—	dB
CMRR	Common Mode Rejection Ratio	5V	PLTABW=0 or 1	50	80	—	dB
A_{OL}	Open Loop Gain	5V	PLTABW=0 or 1	60	80	—	dB
SR	Slew Rate	5V	R_{LOAD}=1MΩ, C_{LOAD}=60pF, PLTABW=0	180	500	—	V/ms
			R_{LOAD}=1MΩ, C_{LOAD}=60pF, PLTABW=1	600	1800	—	
GBW	Gain Bandwidth	5V	R_{LOAD}=1MΩ, C_{LOAD}=60pF, PLTABW=0	400	600	—	kHz
			R_{LOAD}=1MΩ, C_{LOAD}=60pF, PLTABW=1	1300	2000	—	
V_{OR}	Maximum Output Voltage Range	5V	PLTABW=0 or 1, R_{LOAD}=5kΩ to V_{DD}/2	V_{SS}+210	—	V_{DD}-230	mV
I_{SC}	Output Short Circuit Current	5V	R_{LOAD}=5.1Ω, PLTABW=0 or 1	±8.5	±20	—	mA

Note: These parameters are characterized but not tested.

Ta=-40°C~85°C

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V_{DD}	Conditions				
I_{OPA}	Operating Current	2.2V~5.5V	PLTABW=0, no load	—	80	128	μA
			PLTABW=1, no load	—	200	320	
V_{OS}	Input Offset Voltage	2.2V~5.5V	Without calibration (PLTAOF [5:0]=100000B)	-15	—	15	mV
			With calibration	-2	—	2	
I_{OS}	Input Offset Current	2.2V~5.5V	V_{IN}=1/2 V_{CM}	—	1	10	nA
V_{CM}	Common Mode Voltage Range	2.2V~5.5V	PLTABW=0 or 1	V_{SS}	—	V_{DD}-1.4	V
PSRR	Power Supply Rejection Ratio	2.2V~5.5V	PLTABW=0 or 1	50	70	—	dB
CMRR	Common Mode Rejection Ratio	2.2V~5.5V	PLTABW=0 or 1	50	80	—	dB
A_{OL}	Open Loop Gain	2.2V~5.5V	PLTABW=0 or 1	60	80	—	dB
SR	Slew Rate	2.2V~5.5V	R_{LOAD}=1MΩ, C_{LOAD}=60pF, PLTABW=0	180	500	—	V/ms
			R_{LOAD}=1MΩ, C_{LOAD}=60pF, PLTABW=1	600	1800	—	
GBW	Gain Bandwidth	2.2V~5.5V	R_{LOAD}=1MΩ, C_{LOAD}=60pF, PLTABW=0	250	600	—	kHz
			R_{LOAD}=1MΩ, C_{LOAD}=60pF, PLTABW=1	800	2000	—	
V_{OR}	Maximum Output Voltage Range	2.2V~5.5V	PLTABW=0 or 1, R_{LOAD}=5kΩ to V_{DD}/2	V_{SS}+210	—	V_{DD}-230	mV
I_{SC}	Output Short Circuit Current	2.2V~5.5V	R_{LOAD}=5.1Ω, PLTABW=0 or 1	±2	±20	—	mA

Note: These parameters are characterized but not tested.

D/A Converter Electrical Characteristics

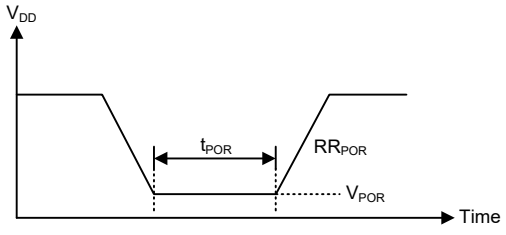
Ta=-40°C~85°C

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V_{DD}	Conditions				
V_{DD}	Operating Voltage	—	—	2.2	—	5.5	V
V_{DACO}	Output Voltage Range	—	—	V_{SS}	—	V_{REF}	V
V_{REF}	Reference Voltage	—	—	2	—	V_{DD}	V
I_{DAC}	Additional Current for D/A Converter Enable (DAC0 & DAC1)	3V	—	—	—	12	μA
		5V	—	—	—	20	
	Additional Current for D/A Converter Enable (DAC2)	3V	—	—	—	360	μA
		5V	—	—	—	600	
t_{ST}	Settling Time	3V	C_{LOAD}=50pF	—	—	5	μs
		5V		—	—	5	
DNL	Differential Non-linearity	3V	$V_{REF}=V_{DD}$	-1	—	+1	LSB
		5V		-1	—	+1	
INL	Integral Non-linearity	3V	$V_{REF}=V_{DD}$	-1.5	—	+1.5	LSB
		5V		-1.5	—	+1.5	
Ro	Resistor-String Output Resistor (DAC0 & DAC1)	3V	—	—	1000	—	kΩ
		5V	—	—	1000	—	
	R2R Output Resistor (DAC2)	3V	—	—	10	—	kΩ
		5V	—	—	10	—	
OSRR	Offset Error	3V	—	—	—	6	mV
		5V	—	—	—	10	
GERR	Gain Error	3V	—	—	—	12	mV
		5V	—	—	—	20	

Power-on Reset Characteristics

Ta=-40°C~85°C

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V_{DD}	Conditions				
V_{POR}	V_{DD} Start Voltage to Ensure Power-on Reset	—	—	—	—	100	mV
RR_{POR}	V_{DD} Rising Rate to Ensure Power-on Reset	—	—	0.035	—	—	V/ms
t_{POR}	Minimum Time for V_{DD} Stays at V_{POR} to Ensure Power-on Reset	—	—	1	—	—	ms



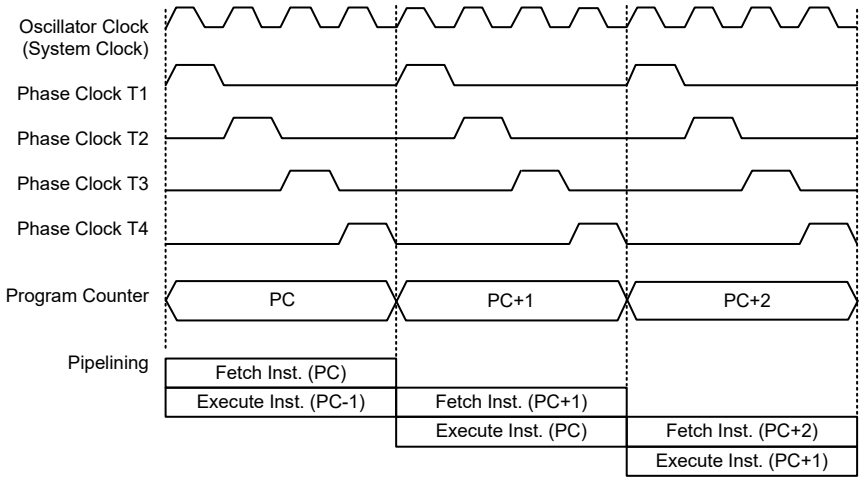
System Architecture

A key factor in the high-performance features of the Holtek range of microcontrollers is attributed to their internal system architecture. The device takes advantage of the usual features found within RISC microcontrollers providing increased speed of operation and enhanced performance. The pipelining scheme is implemented in such a way that instruction fetching and instruction execution are overlapped, hence instructions are effectively executed in one or two cycles for most of the standard or extended instructions respectively. The exceptions to these are branch or call instructions which need one more cycle. An 8-bit wide ALU is used in practically all instruction set operations, which carries out arithmetic operations, logic operations, rotation, increment, decrement, branch decisions, etc. The internal data path is simplified by moving data through the Accumulator and the ALU. Certain internal registers are implemented in the Data Memory and can be directly or indirectly addressed. The simple addressing methods of these registers along with additional architectural features ensure that a minimum of external components is required to provide a functional I/O and A/D control system with maximum reliability and flexibility. This makes the device suitable for low-cost, high-volume production for controller applications.

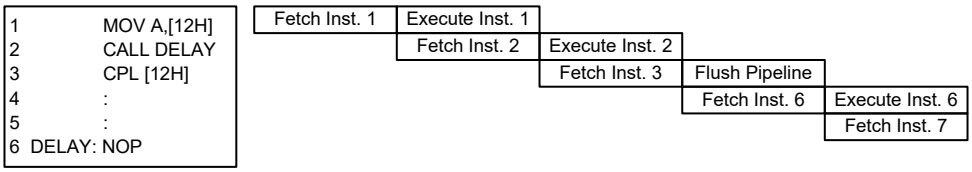
Clocking and Pipelining

The main system clock, derived from either an HIRC or LIRC oscillator is subdivided into four internally generated non-overlapping clocks, T1~T4. The Program Counter is incremented at the beginning of the T1 clock during which time a new instruction is fetched. The remaining T2~T4 clocks carry out the decoding and execution functions. In this way, one T1~T4 clock cycle forms one instruction cycle. Although the fetching and execution of instructions takes place in consecutive instruction cycles, the pipelining structure of the microcontroller ensures that instructions are effectively executed in one instruction cycle. The exception to this are instructions where the contents of the Program Counter are changed, such as subroutine calls or jumps, in which case the instruction will take one more instruction cycle to execute.

For instructions involving branches, such as jump or call instructions, two machine cycles are required to complete instruction execution. An extra cycle is required as the program takes one cycle to first obtain the actual jump or call address and then another cycle to actually execute the branch. The requirement for this extra cycle should be taken into account by programmers in timing sensitive applications.



System Clocking and Pipelining



Instruction Fetching

Program Counter

During program execution, the Program Counter is used to keep track of the address of the next instruction to be executed. It is automatically incremented by one each time an instruction is executed except for instructions, such as "JMP" or "CALL" that demands a jump to a non-consecutive Program Memory address. Only the lower 8 bits, known as the Program Counter Low Register, are directly addressable by the application program.

When executing instructions requiring jumps to non-consecutive addresses such as a jump instruction, a subroutine call, interrupt or reset, etc., the microcontroller manages program control by loading the required address into the Program Counter. For conditional skip instructions, once the condition has been met, the next instruction, which has already been fetched during the present instruction execution, is discarded and a dummy cycle takes its place while the correct instruction is obtained.

Program Counter	
High Byte	**Low Byte (PCL)**
PC11~PC8	PCL7~PCL0

Program Counter

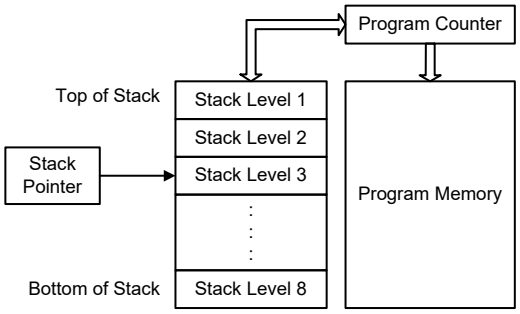
The lower byte of the Program Counter, known as the Program Counter Low register or PCL, is available for program control and is a readable and writeable register. By transferring data directly into this register, a short program jump can be executed directly; however, as only this low byte is available for manipulation, the jumps are limited to the present page of memory that is 256 locations. When such program jumps are executed it should also be noted that a dummy cycle will be inserted. Manipulating the PCL register may cause program branching, so an extra cycle is needed to pre-fetch.

Stack

This is a special part of the memory which is used to save the contents of the Program Counter only. The stack is organized into multiple levels and neither part of the data nor part of the program space, and is neither readable nor writeable. The activated level is indexed by the Stack Pointer, and is neither readable nor writeable. At a subroutine call or interrupt acknowledge signal, the contents of the Program Counter are pushed onto the stack. At the end of a subroutine or an interrupt routine, signaled by a return instruction, RET or RETI, the Program Counter is restored to its previous value from the stack. After a device reset, the Stack Pointer will point to the top of the stack.

If the stack is full and an enabled interrupt takes place, the interrupt request flag will be recorded but the acknowledge signal will be inhibited. When the Stack Pointer is decremented, by RET or RETI, the interrupt will be serviced. This feature prevents stack overflow allowing the programmer to use the structure more easily. However, when the stack is full, a CALL subroutine instruction can still be executed which will result in a stack overflow. Precautions should be taken to avoid such cases which might cause unpredictable program branching.

If the stack is overflow, the first Program Counter save in the stack will be lost.



Arithmetic and Logic Unit – ALU

The arithmetic-logic unit or ALU is a critical area of the microcontroller that carries out arithmetic and logic operations of the instruction set. Connected to the main microcontroller data bus, the ALU receives related instruction codes and performs the required arithmetic or logical operations after which the result will be placed in the specified register. As these ALU calculation or operations may result in carry, borrow or other status changes, the status register will be correspondingly updated to reflect these changes. The ALU supports the following functions:

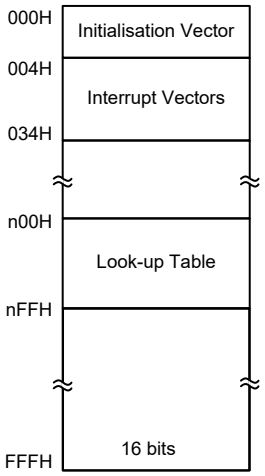
- Arithmetic operations:
  ADD, ADDM, ADC, ADCM, SUB, SUBM, SBC, SBCM, DAA, LADD, LADDM, LADC, LADCM, LSUB, LSUBM, LSBC, LSBCM, LDAA
- Logic operations:
  AND, OR, XOR, ANDM, ORM, XORM, CPL, CPLA, LAND, LOR, LXOR, LANDM, LORM, LXORM, LCPL, LCPLA
- Rotation:
  RRA, RR, RRCA, RRC, RLA, RL, RLCA, RLC, LRR, LRRA, LRRCA, LRRC, LRLA, LRL, LRLCA, LRLC
- Increment and Decrement:
  INCA, INC, DECA, DEC, LINCA, LINC, LDECA, LDEC
- Branch decision:
  JMP, SZ, SZA, SNZ, SIZ, SDZ, SIZA, SDZA, CALL, RET, RETI, LSZ, LSZA, LSNZ, LSIZ, LSDZ, LSIZA, LSDZA

Flash Program Memory

The Program Memory is the location where the user code or program is stored. For the device the Program Memory is Flash type, which means it can be programmed and re-programmed a large number of times, allowing the user the convenience of code modification on the same device. By using the appropriate programming tools, the Flash device offers users the flexibility to conveniently debug and develop their applications while also offering a means of field programming and updating.

Structure

The Program Memory has a capacity of 4K×16 bits. The Program Memory is addressed by the Program Counter and also contains data, table information and interrupt entries. Table data, which can be setup in any location within the Program Memory, is addressed by a separate table pointer register.



Program Memory Structure

Special Vectors

Within the Program Memory, certain locations are reserved for the reset and interrupts. The location 000H is reserved for use by the device reset for program initialisation. After a device reset is initiated, the program will jump to this location and begin execution.

Look-up Table

Any location within the Program Memory can be defined as a look-up table where programmers can store fixed data. To use the look-up table, the table pointer must first be setup by placing the address of the look up data to be retrieved in the table pointer registers, TBLP and TBHP. These registers define the total address of the look-up table.

After setting up the table pointer, the table data can be retrieved from the Program Memory using the corresponding table read instruction such as “TABRD [m]” or “TABRDL [m]” respectively when the memory [m] is located in Sector 0. If the memory [m] is located in other sectors, the data can be retrieved from the program memory using the corresponding extended table read instruction such as “LTABRD [m]” or “LTABRDL [m]” respectively. When the instruction is executed, the lower order table byte from the Program Memory will be transferred to the user defined Data Memory register [m] as specified in the instruction. The higher order table data byte from the Program Memory will be transferred to the TBLH special register.

The accompanying diagram illustrates the addressing data flow of the look-up table.

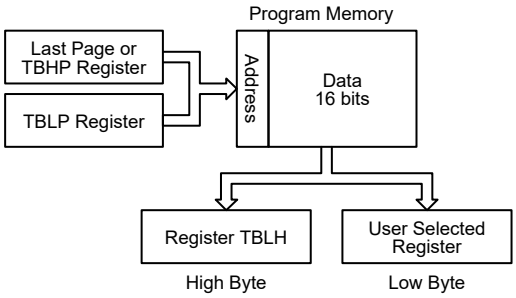


Table Program Example

The following example shows how the table pointer and table data is defined and retrieved from the microcontroller. This example uses raw table data located in the Program Memory which is stored there using the ORG statement. The value at this ORG statement is "0F00H" which refers to the start address of the last page within the 4K Program Memory of the device. The table pointer low byte register is setup here to have an initial value of "06H". This will ensure that the first data read from the data table will be at the Program Memory address "0F06H" or 6 locations after the start of the last page. Note that the value for the table pointer is referenced to the first address specified by TBLP and TBHP if the "TABRD [m]" or "LTABRD [m]" instruction is being used. The high byte of the table data which in this case is equal to zero will be transferred to the TBLH register automatically when the "TABRD [m]" or "LTABRD [m]" instruction is executed.

Because the TBLH register is a read/write register and can be restored, care should be taken to ensure its protection if both the main routine and Interrupt Service Routine use table read instructions. If using the table read instructions, the Interrupt Service Routines may change the value of the TBLH and subsequently cause errors if used again by the main routine. As a rule, it is recommended that simultaneous use of the table read instructions should be avoided. However, in situations where simultaneous use cannot be avoided, the interrupts should be disabled prior to the execution of any main routine table-read instructions. Note that all table related instructions require two instruction cycles to complete their operation.

Table Read Program Example

```
tempreg1 db ?      ; temporary register #1
tempreg2 db ?      ; temporary register #2
:
:
mov a,06h          ; initialise low table pointer - note that this address is referenced
mov tblp,a         ; to the last page or the page that tbhp pointed
mov a,0Fh          ; initialise high table pointer
mov tbhp,a
:
:
tabrd tempreg1     ; transfers value in table referenced by table pointer data at program
                   ; memory address "0F06H" transferred to tempreg1 and TBLH
dec tblp           ; reduce value of table pointer by one
tabrd tempreg2     ; transfers value in table referenced by table pointer data at program
                   ; memory address "0F05H" transferred to tempreg2 and TBLH
                   ; in this example the data "1AH" is transferred to tempreg1 and data
                   ; "0FH" to register tempreg2
:
:
org 0F00h          ; sets initial address of program memory
dc 00Ah, 00Bh, 00Ch, 00Dh, 00Eh, 00Fh, 01Ah, 01Bh
:
:
```

In Circuit Programming – ICP

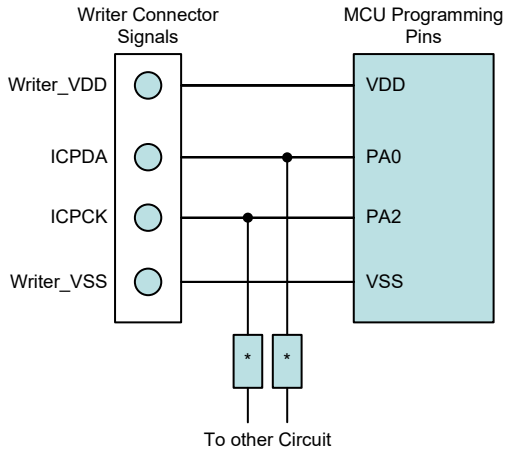
The provision of Flash Type Program Memory provides the user with a means of convenient and easy upgrades and modifications to their programs on the same device. As an additional convenience, a means of programming the microcontroller in-circuit has provided using a 4-pin interface. This provides manufacturers with the possibility of manufacturing their circuit boards complete with a programmed or un-programmed microcontroller, and then programming or upgrading the program at a later stage. This enables product manufacturers to easily keep their manufactured products supplied with the latest program releases without removal and re-insertion of the device.

The Holtek Flash MCU to Writer Programming Pin correspondence table is as follows:

Holtek Writer Pins	MCU Programming Pins	Pin Description
ICPDA	PA0	Programming Serial Data/Address
ICPCK	PA2	Programming Clock
VDD	VDD	Power Supply
VSS	VSS	Ground

The Program Memory can be programmed serially in-circuit using this 4-wire interface. Data is downloaded and uploaded serially on a single pin with an additional line for the clock. Two additional lines are required for the power supply. The technical details regarding the in-circuit programming of the device is beyond the scope of this document and will be supplied in supplementary literature.

During the programming process, taking control of the ICPDA and ICPCK pins for data and clock programming purposes. The user must there take care to ensure that no other outputs are connected to these two pins.



Note: * may be resistor or capacitor. The resistance of * must be greater than 1kΩ or the capacitance of * must be less than 1nF.

On Chip Debug Support – OCDS

An EV chip exists for the purposes of device emulation. This EV chip device also provides an "On-Chip Debug" function to debug the real MCU device during the development process. The EV chip and the real MCU device are almost functionally compatible except for "On-Chip Debug" function. Users can use the EV chip device to emulate the real chip device behavior by connecting the OCDSDA and OCDSCK pins to the Holtek HT-IDE development tools. The OCDSDA pin is the OCDS Data/Address input/output pin while the OCDSCK pin is the OCDS clock input pin. When users use the EV chip for debugging, other functions which are shared with the OCDSDA and OCDSCK pins in the device will have no effect in the EV chip. However, the two OCDS pins which

are pin-shared with the ICP programming pins are still used as the Flash Memory programming pins for ICP. For more detailed OCDS information, refer to the corresponding document named "Holtek e-Link for 8-bit MCU OCDS User's Guide".

Holtek e-Link Pins	EV Chip Pins	Pin Description
OCDSDA	OCDSDA	On-Chip Debug Support Data/Address input/output
OCDSCK	OCDSCK	On-Chip Debug Support Clock input
VDD	VDD	Power Supply
VSS	VSS	Ground

Data Memory

The Data Memory is a volatile area of 8-bit wide RAM internal memory and is the location where temporary information is stored.

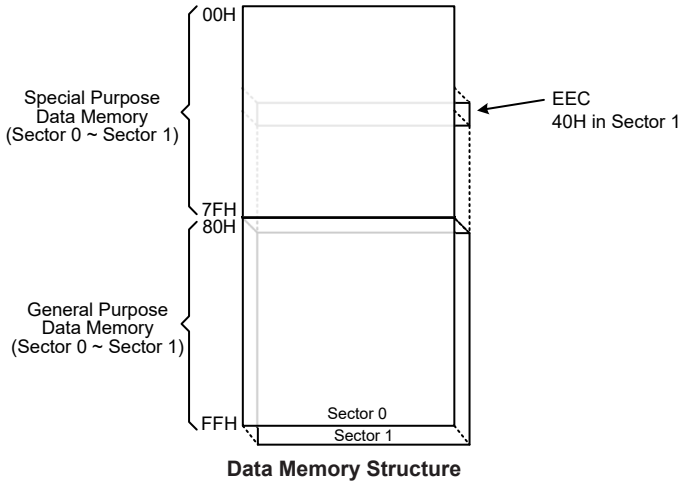
Categorized into two types, the first of these is an area of RAM where special function registers are located. These registers have fixed locations and are necessary for correct operation of the device. Many of these registers can be read from and written to directly under program control, however, some remain protected from user manipulation. The second area of Data Memory is reserved for general purpose use. All locations within this area are read and write accessible under program control.

Switching between the different Data Memory sectors is achieved by properly setting the Memory Pointers to correct value when using the indirect addressing method.

Structure

The Data Memory is subdivided into several sectors, all of which are implemented in 8-bit wide RAM. Each of the Data Memory Sector is categorized into two types, the special Purpose Data Memory and the General Purpose Data Memory. The address range of the Special Purpose Data Memory for the device is from 00H to 7FH while the General Purpose Data Memory address range is from 80H to FFH.

Special Purpose Data Memory	General Purpose Data Memory	
Located Sectors	Capacity	Sector: Address
0: 00H~7FH 1: 40H (EEC only)	256×8	0: 80H~FFH 1: 80H~FFH



Data Memory Structure

Data Memory Addressing

For the device that supports the extended instructions, there is no Bank Pointer for Data Memory addressing. The desired Sector is pointed by the MP1H or MP2H register and the certain Data Memory address in the selected sector is specified by the MP1L or MP2L register when using indirect addressing access.

Direct Addressing can be used in all sectors using the corresponding instruction which can address all available data memory space. For the accessed data memory which is located in any data memory sectors except Sector 0, the extended instructions can be used to access the data memory instead of using the indirect addressing access. The main difference between standard instructions and extended instructions is that the data memory address “m” in the extended instructions has 9 valid bits, the high byte indicates a sector and the low byte indicates a specific address within the sector.

General Purpose Data Memory

All microcontroller programs require an area of read/write memory where temporary data can be stored and retrieved for use later. It is this area of RAM memory that is known as General Purpose Data Memory. This area of Data Memory is fully accessible by the user programing for both reading and writing operations. By using the bit operation instructions individual bits can be set or reset under program control giving the user a large range of flexibility for bit manipulation in the Data Memory.

Special Purpose Data Memory

This area of Data Memory is where registers, necessary for the correct operation of the microcontroller, are stored. Most of the registers are both readable and writeable but some are protected and are readable only, the details of which are located under the relevant Special Function Register section. Note that for locations that are unused, any read instruction to these addresses will return the value “00H”.

	Sector 0	Sector 1
00H	IAR0	
01H	MP0	
02H	IAR1	
03H	MP1L	
04H	MP1H	
05H	ACC	
06H	PCL	
07H	TBLP	
08H	TBLH	
09H	TBHP	
0AH	STATUS	
0BH		
0CH	IAR2	
0DH	MP2L	
0EH	MP2H	
0FH	RSTFC	
10H	TB0C	
11H	TB1C	
12H	SCC	
13H	HIRCC	
14H	PA	
15H	PAC	
16H	PAPU	
17H	PAWU	
18H	PB	
19H	PBC	
1AH	PBPU	
1BH	PC	
1CH	PCC	
1DH	PCPU	
1EH	SLEDC0	
1FH	SLEDC1	
20H	PSCR	
21H	LVDC	
22H		
23H	ORMC	
24H		
25H		
26H		
27H	CTM0C0	
28H	CTM0C1	
29H	CTM0DL	
2AH	CTM0DH	
2BH	CTM0AL	
2CH	CTM0AH	
2DH	SADOH	
2EH	SADOL	
2FH	SADC0	
30H	SADC1	
31H	PLTSW	
32H	PLTDACC	
33H	PLTDA0L	
34H	PLTDA1L	
35H	PLTDA2L	
36H	PLTC0C	
37H	PLTC0VOS	
38H	PLTC1C	
39H	PLTC1VOS	
3AH	PLTCHYC	
3BH	PLTAC	
3CH	PLTAVOS	
3DH	WDTC	
3EH	EEA	
3FH	EED	

	Sector 0	Sector 1
40H		EEC
41H	USR	
42H	UCR1	
43H	UCR2	
44H	UCR3	
45H	TXR_RXR	
46H	BRG	
47H	INTEG	
48H	INTC0	
49H	INTC1	
4AH	INTC2	
4BH	INTC3	
4CH	MFI0	
4DH	MFI1	
4EH	MFI2	
4FH	MFI3	
50H	MFI4	
51H		
52H	PTM0C0	
53H	PTM0C1	
54H	PTM0C2	
55H	PTM0DL	
56H	PTM0DH	
57H	PTM0AL	
58H	PTM0AH	
59H	PTM0BL	
5AH	PTM0BH	
5BH	PTM0RPL	
5CH	PTM0RPH	
5DH	PTM1C0	
5EH	PTM1C1	
5FH	PTM1DL	
60H	PTM1DH	
61H	PTM1AL	
62H	PTM1AH	
63H	PTM1RPL	
64H	PTM1RPH	
65H	CTM1C0	
66H	CTM1C1	
67H	CTM1DL	
68H	CTM1DH	
69H	CTM1AL	
6AH	CTM1AH	
6BH	PAS0	
6CH	PAS1	
6DH	PBS0	
6EH	PCS0	
6FH	PCS1	
70H	IFS	
71H		
72H		
73H		
74H		
75H		
76H		
77H		
78H		
79H		
7AH		
7BH		
7CH		
7DH		
7EH		
7FH		

: Unused, read as 00H

Special Purpose Data Memory Structure

Special Function Register Description

Most of the Special Function Register details will be described in the relevant functional sections however several registers require a separate description in this section.

Indirect Addressing Registers – IAR0, IAR1, IAR2

The Indirect Addressing Registers, IAR0, IAR1 and IAR2, although having their locations in normal RAM register space, do not actually physically exist as normal registers. The method of indirect addressing for RAM data manipulation uses these Indirect Addressing Registers and Memory Pointers, in contrast to direct memory addressing, where the actual memory address is specified. Actions on the IAR0, IAR1 and IAR2 registers will result in no actual read or write operation to these registers but rather to the memory location specified by their corresponding Memory Pointers, MP0, MP1L/MP1H or MP2L/MP2H. Acting as a pair, IAR0 and MP0 can together access data only from Sector 0 while the IAR1 register together with the MP1L/MP1H register pair and IAR2 register together with the MP2L/MP2H register pair can access data from any Data Memory Sector. As the Indirect Addressing Registers are not physically implemented, reading the Indirect Addressing Registers will return a result of "00H" and writing to the registers will result in no operation.

Memory Pointers – MP0, MP1L, MP1H, MP2L, MP2H

Five Memory Pointers, known as MP0, MP1L, MP1H, MP2L, MP2H, are provided. These Memory Pointers are physically implemented in the Data Memory and can be manipulated in the same way as normal registers providing a convenient way with which to address and track data. When any operation to the relevant Indirect Addressing Registers is carried out, the actual address that the microcontroller is directed to is the address specified by the related Memory Pointer. MP0, together with Indirect Addressing Register, IAR0, are used to access data from Sector 0, while MP1L/MP1H together with IAR1 and MP2L/MP2H together with IAR2 are used to access data from all sectors according to the corresponding MP1H or MP2H register. Direct Addressing can be used in all sectors using the corresponding instruction which can address all available data memory space.

The following example shows how to clear a section of four Data Memory locations already defined as locations adres1 to adres4.

Indirect Addressing Program Example 1

```
data .section ´data´
adres1   db ?
adres2   db ?
adres3   db ?
adres4   db ?
block    db ?
code .section at 0 ´code´
org 00h
start:
     mov a, 04h           ; setup size of block
     mov block, a
     mov a, offset adres1  ; Accumulator loaded with first RAM address
     mov mp0, a           ; setup memory pointer with first RAM address
loop:
     clr IAR0             ; clear the data at address defined by MP0
     inc mp0              ; increase memory pointer
     sdz block            ; check if last memory location has been cleared
     jmp loop
continue:
```

Indirect Addressing Program Example 2

```
data .section ´data´
adres1   db ?
adres2   db ?
adres3   db ?
adres4   db ?
block    db ?
code .section at 0 ´code´
org 00h
start:
     mov a, 04h              ; setup size of block
     mov block, a
     mov a, 01h              ; setup the memory sector
     mov mp1h, a
     mov a, offset adres1    ; Accumulator loaded with first RAM address
     mov mp1l, a             ; setup memory pointer with first RAM address
loop:
     clr IAR1                ; clear the data at address defined by MP1L
     inc mp1l                ; increase memory pointer MP1L
     sdz block               ; check if last memory location has been cleared
     jmp loop
continue:
```

The important point to note here is that in the example shown above, no reference is made to specific Data Memory addresses.

Direct Addressing Program Example using extended instructions

```
data .section ´data´
temp  db ?
code .section at 0 ´code´
org 00h
start:
     lmov a, [m]             ; move [m] data to acc
     lsub a, [m+1]           ; compare [m] and [m+1] data
     snz  c                  ; [m]>[m+1]?
     jmp  continue           ; no
     lmov a, [m]             ; yes, exchange [m] and [m+1] data
     mov  temp, a
     lmov a, [m+1]
     lmov [m], a
     mov  a, temp
     lmov [m+1], a
continue:
```

Note: Here “m” is a data memory address located in any data memory sectors. For example, m=1F0H, it indicates address 0F0H in Sector 1.

Accumulator – ACC

The Accumulator is central to the operation of any microcontroller and is closely related with operations carried out by the ALU. The Accumulator is the place where all intermediate results from the ALU are stored. Without the Accumulator it would be necessary to write the result of each calculation or logical operation such as addition, subtraction, shift, etc., to the Data Memory resulting in higher programming and timing overheads. Data transfer operations usually involve the temporary storage function of the Accumulator; for example, when transferring data between one user-defined register and another, it is necessary to do this by passing the data through the Accumulator as no direct transfer between two registers is permitted.

Program Counter Low Register – PCL

To provide additional program control functions, the low byte of the Program Counter is made accessible to programmers by locating it within the Special Purpose area of the Data Memory. By manipulating this register, direct jumps to other program locations are easily implemented. Loading a value directly into this PCL register will cause a jump to the specified Program Memory location, however, as the register is only 8-bit wide, only jumps within the current Program Memory page are permitted. When such operations are used, note that a dummy cycle will be inserted.

Look-up Table Registers – TBLP, TBHP, TBLH

These three special function registers are used to control operation of the look-up table which is stored in the Program Memory. TBLP and TBHP are the table pointers and indicate the location where the table data is located. Their value must be setup before any table read commands are executed. Their value can be changed, for example using the "INC" or "DEC" instructions, allowing for easy table data pointing and reading. TBLH is the location where the high order byte of the table data is stored after a table read data instruction has been executed. Note that the lower order table data byte is transferred to a user defined location.

Status Register – STATUS

This 8-bit register contains the SC flag, CZ flag, zero flag (Z), carry flag (C), auxiliary carry flag (AC), overflow flag (OV), power down flag (PDF), and watchdog time-out flag (TO). These arithmetic/logical operation and system management flags are used to record the status and operation of the microcontroller.

With the exception of the TO and PDF flags, bits in the status register can be altered by instructions like most other registers. Any data written into the status register will not change the TO or PDF flag. In addition, operations related to the status register may give different results due to the different instruction operations. The TO flag can be affected only by a system power-up, a WDT time-out or by executing the "CLR WDT" or "HALT" instruction. The PDF flag is affected only by executing the "HALT" or "CLR WDT" instruction or during a system power-up.

The Z, OV, AC, C, SC and CZ flags generally reflect the status of the latest operations.

- C is set if an operation results in a carry during an addition operation or if a borrow does not take place during a subtraction operation; otherwise C is cleared. C is also affected by a rotate through carry instruction.
- AC is set if an operation results in a carry out of the low nibbles in addition, or no borrow from the high nibble into the low nibble in subtraction; otherwise AC is cleared.
- Z is set if the result of an arithmetic or logical operation is zero; otherwise Z is cleared.
- OV is set if an operation results in a carry into the highest-order bit but not a carry out of the highest-order bit, or vice versa; otherwise OV is cleared.
- PDF is cleared by a system power-up or executing the "CLR WDT" instruction. PDF is set by executing the "HALT" instruction.
- TO is cleared by a system power-up or executing the "CLR WDT" or "HALT" instruction. TO is set by a WDT time-out.
- CZ is the operational result of different flags for different instructions. Refer to register definitions for more details.
- SC is the result of the "XOR" operation which is performed by the OV flag and the MSB of the current instruction operation result.

In addition, on entering an interrupt sequence or executing a subroutine call, the status register will not be pushed onto the stack automatically. If the contents of the status register are important and if the subroutine can corrupt the status register, precautions must be taken to correctly save it.

• **STATUS Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	SC	CZ	TO	PDF	OV	Z	AC	C
R/W	R/W	R/W	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	x	x	0	0	x	x	x	x

"x": Unknown

Bit 7 **SC**: The result of the "XOR" operation which is performed by the OV flag and the MSB of the instruction operation result.

Bit 6 **CZ**: The operational result of different flags for different instructions.
For SUB/SUBM/LSUB/LSUBM instructions, the CZ flag is equal to the Z flag.
For SBC/SBCM/LSBC/LSBCM instructions, the CZ flag is the "AND" operation result which is performed by the previous operation CZ flag and current operation zero flag.
For other instructions, the CZ flag will not be affected.

Bit 5 **TO**: Watchdog Time-out flag
0: After power up or executing the "CLR WDT" or "HALT" instruction
1: A watchdog time-out occurred.

Bit 4 **PDF**: Power down flag
0: After power up or executing the "CLR WDT" instruction
1: By executing the "HALT" instruction

Bit 3 **OV**: Overflow flag
0: No overflow
1: An operation results in a carry into the highest-order bit but not a carry out of the highest-order bit or vice versa.

Bit 2 **Z**: Zero flag
0: The result of an arithmetic or logical operation is not zero
1: The result of an arithmetic or logical operation is zero

Bit 1 **AC**: Auxiliary flag
0: No auxiliary carry
1: An operation results in a carry out of the low nibbles in addition, or no borrow from the high nibble into the low nibble in subtraction

Bit 0 **C**: Carry flag
0: No carry-out
1: An operation results in a carry during an addition operation or if a borrow does not take place during a subtraction operation
The "C" flag is also affected by a rotate through carry instruction.

Option Memory Mapping Register – ORMC

The ORMC register is used to enable the Option Memory Mapping function. The Option Memory capacity is 32 words. When a specific pattern of 55H and AAH is consecutively written into this register, the Option Memory Mapping function will be enabled and then the Option Memory code can be read by using the table read instruction. The Option Memory addresses 00H~1FH will be mapped to Program Memory last page addresses E0H~FFH.

To successfully enable the Option Memory Mapping function, the specific pattern of 55H and AAH must be written into the ORMC register in two consecutive instruction cycles. It is therefore recommended that the global interrupt bit EMI should first be cleared before writing the specific pattern, and then set high again at a proper time according to users' requirements after the pattern is

successfully written. An internal timer will be activated when the pattern is successfully written. The mapping operation will be automatically finished after a period of $4 \times t_{LIRC}$. Therefore, users should read the data in time, otherwise the Option Memory Mapping function needs to be restarted. After the completion of each consecutive write operation to the ORMC register, the timer will recount.

When the table read instructions are used to read the Option Memory code, both "TABRD [m]" and "TABRDL [m]" instructions can be used. However, care must be taken if the "TABRD [m]" instruction is used, the table pointer defined by the TBHP register must be referenced to the last page. Refer to corresponding sections about the table read instruction for more details.

- **ORMC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	ORMC7	ORMC6	ORMC5	ORMC4	ORMC3	ORMC2	ORMC1	ORMC0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **ORMC7~ORMC0**: Option Memory Mapping specific pattern
When a specific pattern of 55H and AAH is written into this register, the Option Memory Mapping function will be enabled. Note that the register content will be cleared after the MCU is woken up from the IDLE/SLEEP mode.

EEPROM Data Memory

The device contains an area of internal EEPROM Data Memory. EEPROM is by its nature a non-volatile form of re-programmable memory, with data retention even when its power supply is removed. By incorporating this kind of data memory, a whole new host of application possibilities are made available to the designer. The availability of EEPROM storage allows information such as product identification numbers, calibration values, specific user data, system setup data or other product information to be stored directly within the product microcontroller. The process of reading and writing data to the EEPROM memory has been reduced to a very trivial affair.

EEPROM Data Memory Structure

The EEPROM Data Memory capacity is 64×8 bits for the device. Unlike the Program Memory and RAM Data Memory, the EEPROM Data Memory is not directly mapped into memory space and is therefore not directly addressable in the same way as the other types of memory. Read and Write operations to the EEPROM are carried out in single byte operations using an address register and a data register in Sector 0 and a single control register in Sector 1.

EEPROM Registers

Three registers control the overall operation of the internal EEPROM Data Memory. These are the address register, EEA, the data register, EED and a single control register, EEC. As both the EEA and EED registers are located in Sector 0, they can be directly accessed in the same way as any other Special Function Register. The EEC register however, being located in Sector 1, can only be read from or written to indirectly using the MP1L/MP1H or MP2L/MP2H Memory Pointer and Indirect Addressing Register, IAR1/IAR2. Because the EEC control register is located at address 40H in Sector 1, the MP1L or MP2L Memory Pointer must first be set to the value 40H and the MP1H or MP2H Memory Pointer high byte set to the value, 01H, before any operations on the EEC register are executed.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
EEA	—	—	EEA5	EEA4	EEA3	EEA2	EEA1	EEA0
EED	EED7	EED6	EED5	EED4	EED3	EED2	EED1	EED0
EEC	D7	—	—	—	WREN	WR	RDEN	RD

EEPROM Register List

- **EEA Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	EEA5	EEA4	EEA3	EEA2	EEA1	EEA0
R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 5~0 **EEA5~EEA0**: Data EEPROM address bit 5 ~ bit 0

- **EED Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	EED7	EED6	EED5	EED4	EED3	EED2	EED1	EED0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: Data EEPROM data bit 7 ~ bit 0

- **EEC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	—	—	—	WREN	WR	RDEN	RD
R/W	R/W	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	—	—	—	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 **D7**: Reserved, must be fixed at "0"

Bit 6~4 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 3 **WREN**: Data EEPROM Write Enable
0: Disable
1: Enable
This is the Data EEPROM Write Enable Bit which must be set high before Data EEPROM write operations are carried out. Clearing this bit to zero will inhibit Data EEPROM write operations.

Bit 2 **WR**: EEPROM Write Control
0: Write cycle has finished
1: Activate a write cycle
This is the Data EEPROM Write Control Bit and when set high by the application program will activate a write cycle. This bit will be automatically reset to zero by the hardware after the write cycle has finished. Setting this bit high will have no effect if the WREN has not first been set high.

Bit 1 **RDEN**: Data EEPROM Read Enable
0: Disable
1: Enable
This is the Data EEPROM Read Enable Bit which must be set high before Data EEPROM read operations are carried out. Clearing this bit to zero will inhibit Data EEPROM read operations.

Bit 0 **RD**: EEPROM Read Control
0: Read cycle has finished
1: Activate a read cycle
This is the Data EEPROM Read Control Bit and when set high by the application program will activate a read cycle. This bit will be automatically reset to zero by the hardware after the read cycle has finished. Setting this bit high will have no effect if the RDEN has not first been set high.

Note: 1. The WREN, WR, RDEN and RD cannot be set high at the same time in one instruction. The WR and RD cannot be set high at the same time.
2. Ensure that the f_{SUB} clock is stable before executing the write operation.
3. Ensure that the write operation is totally complete before changing the contents of the EEPROM related registers.

Reading Data from the EEPROM

To read data from the EEPROM, the EEPROM address of the data to be read must first be placed in the EEA register. Then the read enable bit, RDEN, in the EEC register must be set high to enable the read function. If the RD bit in the EEC register is now set high, a read cycle will be initiated. Setting the RD bit high will not initiate a read operation if the RDEN bit has not been set. When the read cycle terminates, the RD bit will be automatically cleared to zero, after which the data can be read from the EED register. The data will remain in the EED register until another read or write operation is executed. The application program can poll the RD bit to determine when the data is valid for reading.

Writing Data to the EEPROM

To write data to the EEPROM, the EEPROM address of the data to be written must first be placed in the EEA register and the data placed in the EED register. To initiate a write cycle, the write enable bit, WREN, in the EEC register must first be set high to enable the write function. After this, the WR bit in the EEC register must be immediately set high to initiate a write cycle. These two instructions must be executed in two consecutive instruction cycles. The global interrupt bit EMI should also first be cleared before implementing any write operations, and then set again after the write cycle has started. Note that setting the WR bit high will not initiate a write cycle if the WREN bit has not been set. As the EEPROM write cycle is controlled using an internal timer whose operation is asynchronous to microcontroller system clock, a certain time will elapse before the data will have been written into the EEPROM. Detecting when the write cycle has finished can be implemented either by polling the WR bit in the EEC register or by using the EEPROM interrupt. When the write cycle terminates, the WR bit will be automatically cleared to zero by the microcontroller, informing the user that the data has been written to the EEPROM. The application program can therefore poll the WR bit to determine when the write cycle has ended.

Write Protection

Protection against inadvertent write operation is provided in several ways. After the device is powered-on the Write Enable bit in the control register will be cleared preventing any write operations. Also at power-on the Memory Pointer high byte register, MP1H or MP2H, will be reset to zero, which means that Data Memory Sector 0 will be selected. As the EEPROM control register is located in Sector 1, this adds a further measure of protection against spurious write operations. During normal program operation, ensuring that the Write Enable bit in the control register is cleared will safeguard against incorrect write operations.

EEPROM Interrupt

The EEPROM write interrupt is generated when an EEPROM write cycle has ended. The EEPROM interrupt must first be enabled by setting the DEE bit in the relevant interrupt register. However, as the EEPROM interrupt is contained within a Multi-function Interrupt, the associated multi-function interrupt enable bit must also be set. When an EEPROM write cycle ends, the DEF request flag will be set. If the global, the EEPROM and the related Multi-function interrupts are enabled and the stack is not full, a jump to the associated Multi-function Interrupt vector will take place. When the interrupt is serviced only the Multi-function interrupt flag will be automatically reset, the EEPROM interrupt flag must be manually reset by the application program. More details can be obtained in the Interrupt section.

Programming Considerations

Care must be taken that data is not inadvertently written to the EEPROM. Protection can be enhanced by ensuring that the Write Enable bit is normally cleared to zero when not writing. Also the Memory Pointer high byte register, MP1H or MP2H, could be normally cleared to zero as this would inhibit access to Sector 1 where the EEPROM control register exists. Although certainly not necessary, consideration might be given in the application program to the checking of the validity of new write data by a simple read back process.

When writing data, the WR bit must be set high immediately after the WREN bit has been set high, to ensure the write cycle executes correctly. The global interrupt bit EMI should also be cleared before a write cycle is executed and then re-enabled after the write cycle starts. Note that the device should not enter the IDLE or SLEEP mode until the EEPROM read or write operation is totally complete. Otherwise, the EEPROM read or write operation will fail.

Programming Examples

Reading data from the EEPROM – polling method

```
MOV  A, EEPROM_ADRES          ; user defined address
MOV  EEA, A
MOV  A, 040H                  ; setup memory pointer MP1L
MOV  MP1L, A                  ; MP1L points to EEC register
MOV  A, 01H                   ; setup memory pointer MP1H
MOV  MP1H, A
SET  IAR1.1                   ; set RDEN bit, enable read operations
SET  IAR1.0                   ; start Read Cycle - set RD bit
BACK:
SZ   IAR1.0                   ; check for read cycle end
JMP  BACK
CLR  IAR1                     ; disable EEPROM read if no more read operations are required
CLR  MP1H
MOV  A, EED                   ; move read data to register
MOV  READ_DATA, A
```

Note: For each read operation, the address register should be re-specified followed by setting the RD bit high to activate a read cycle even if the target address is consecutive.

Writing Data to the EEPROM – polling method

```
MOV  A, EEPROM_ADRES          ; user defined address
MOV  EEA, A
MOV  A, EEPROM_DATA           ; user defined data
MOV  EED, A
MOV  A, 040H                  ; setup memory pointer MP1L
MOV  MP1L, A                  ; MP1L points to EEC register
MOV  A, 01H                   ; setup memory pointer MP1H
MOV  MP1H, A
CLR  EMI
SET  IAR1.3                   ; set WREN bit, enable write operations
SET  IAR1.2                   ; start Write Cycle - set WR bit - executed immediately
                              ; after setting WREN bit
SET  EMI
BACK:
SZ   IAR1.2                   ; check for write cycle end
JMP  BACK
CLR  MP1H
```

Oscillators

Various oscillator options offer the user a wide range of functions according to their various application requirements. The flexible features of the oscillator functions ensure that the best optimisation can be achieved in terms of speed and power saving. Oscillator operations are selected through the combination of configuration option and relevant control registers.

Oscillator Overview

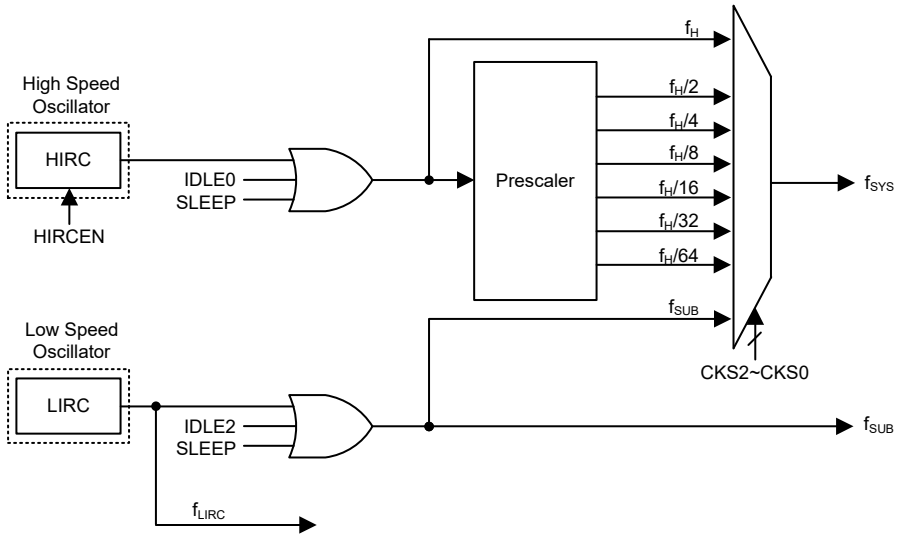
In addition to being the source of the main system clock the oscillators also provide clock sources for the Watchdog Timer and Time Base Interrupts. Two fully integrated internal oscillators, requiring no external components, are provided to form a wide range of both fast and slow system oscillators. The higher frequency oscillator provides higher performance but carry with it the disadvantage of higher power requirements, while the opposite is of course true for the lower frequency oscillator. With the capability of dynamically switching between fast and slow system clock, the device has the flexibility to optimize the performance/power ratio, a feature especially important in power sensitive portable applications.

Type	Name	Frequency
Internal High Speed RC	HIRC	2/4/8MHz
Internal Low Speed RC	LIRC	32kHz

Oscillator Types

System Clock Configurations

There are two oscillator sources, a high speed oscillator and a low speed oscillator. The high speed system clock is sourced from the internal 2/4/8MHz RC oscillator, HIRC. The low speed oscillator is the internal 32kHz RC oscillator, LIRC. Selecting whether the low or high speed oscillator is used as the system oscillator is implemented using the CKS2~CKS0 bits in the SCC register and as the system clock can be dynamically selected.



System Clock Configurations

Internal High Speed RC Oscillator – HIRC

The high speed internal RC oscillator is a fully integrated system oscillator requiring no external components. The internal RC oscillator has three fixed frequencies of 2MHz, 4MHz and 8MHz, which are selected using a configuration option. The HIRC1~HIRC0 bits in the HIRCC register must also be setup to match the selected configuration option frequency. Setting up these bits is necessary to ensure that the HIRC frequency accuracy specified in the A.C. Characteristics is achieved. Device trimming during the manufacturing process and the inclusion of internal frequency compensation circuits are used to ensure that the influence of the power supply voltage, temperature and process variations on the oscillation frequency are minimised.

Internal 32kHz Oscillator – LIRC

The internal 32kHz System Oscillator is also a fully integrated RC oscillator with a typical frequency of 32kHz, requiring no external components for its implementation. Device trimming during the manufacturing process and the inclusion of internal frequency compensation circuits are used to ensure that the influence of the power supply voltage, temperature and process variations on the oscillation frequency are minimised.

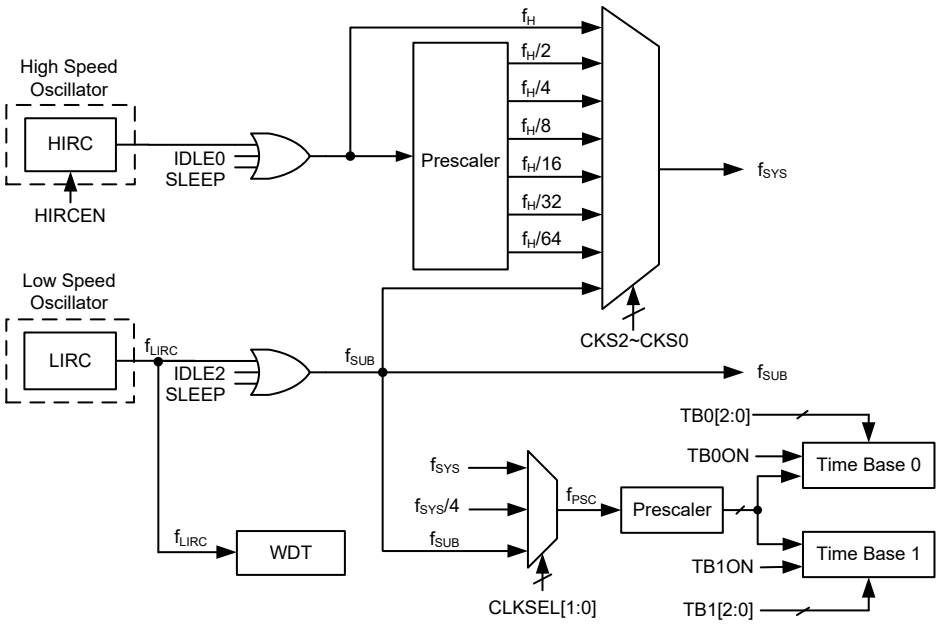
Operating Modes and System Clocks

Present day applications require that their microcontrollers have high performance but often still demand that they consume as little power as possible, conflicting requirements that are especially true in battery powered portable applications. The fast clocks required for high performance will by their nature increase current consumption and of course vice versa, lower speed clocks reduce current consumption. As Holtek has provided the device with both high and low speed clock sources and the means to switch between them dynamically, the user can optimise the operation of their microcontroller to achieve the best performance/power ratio.

System Clocks

The device has many different clock sources for both the CPU and peripheral function operation. By providing the user with a wide range of clock options using register programming, a clock system can be configured to obtain maximum application performance.

The main system clock, can come from a high frequency, f_H, or low frequency, f_{SUB}, source, and is selected using the CKS2~CKS0 bits in the SCC register. The high speed system clock is sourced from the HIRC oscillator. The low speed system clock source is sourced from the LIRC oscillator. The other choice, which is a divided version of the high speed system oscillator has a range of $f_H/2$~$f_H/64$.



Device Clock Configurations

Note: When the system clock source f_{SYS} is switched to f_{SUB} from f_H, the high speed oscillator will stop to conserve the power or continue to oscillate to provide the clock source, f_H~$f_H/64$, for peripheral circuit to use, which is determined by configuring the corresponding high speed oscillator enable control bit.

System Operation Modes

There are six different modes of operation for the microcontroller, each one with its own special characteristics and which can be chosen according to the specific performance and power requirements of the application. There are two modes allowing normal operation of the microcontroller, the FAST Mode and SLOW Mode. The remaining four modes, the SLEEP, IDLE0,

IDLE1 and IDLE2 Modes are used when the microcontroller CPU is switched off to conserve power.

Operation Mode	CPU	Register Setting			f_{SYS}	f_H	f_{SUB}	f_{LIRC}
		FHIDEN	FSIDEN	CKS2~CKS0				
FAST	On	x	x	000~110	f_H~f_H/64	On	On	On
SLOW	On	x	x	111	f_{SUB}	On/Off (1)	On	On
IDLE0	Off	0	1	000~110	Off	Off	On	On
				111	On			
IDLE1	Off	1	1	xxx	On	On	On	On
IDLE2	Off	1	0	000~110	On	On	Off	On
				111	Off			
SLEEP	Off	0	0	xxx	Off	Off	Off	On(2)

"x": Don't care

Note: 1. The f_H clock will be switched on or off by configuring the corresponding oscillator enable bit in the SLOW mode.
2. The f_{LIRC} clock will be switched on in the SLEEP mode as the WDT function is always enabled.

FAST Mode

This is one of the main operating modes where the microcontroller has all of its functions operational and where the system clock is provided by the high speed oscillator. This mode operates allowing the microcontroller to operate normally with a clock source come from the high speed oscillator, HIRC. The high speed oscillator will however first be divided by a ratio ranging from 1 to 64, the actual ratio being selected by the CKS2~CKS0 bits in the SCC register. Although a high speed oscillator is used, running the microcontroller at a divided clock ratio reduces the operating current.

SLOW Mode

This is also a mode where the microcontroller operates normally although now with a slower speed clock source. The clock source used will be from f_{SUB}. The f_{SUB} clock is derived from the LIRC oscillator.

SLEEP Mode

The SLEEP Mode is entered when a HALT instruction is executed and when the FHIDEN and FSIDEN bit both are low. In the SLEEP mode the CPU will be stopped. The f_{SUB} clock provided to the peripheral function will also be stopped. However, the f_{LIRC} clock can continue to operate as the WDT function is always enabled.

IDLE0 Mode

The IDLE0 Mode is entered when a HALT instruction is executed and when the FHIDEN bit in the SCC register is low and the FSIDEN bit in the SCC register is high. In the IDLE0 Mode the CPU will be switched off but the low speed oscillator will be turned on to drive some peripheral functions.

IDLE1 Mode

The IDLE1 Mode is entered when a HALT instruction is executed and when the FHIDEN bit in the SCC register is high and the FSIDEN bit in the SCC register is high. In the IDLE1 Mode the CPU will be switched off but both the high and low speed oscillators will be turned on to provide a clock source to keep some peripheral functions operational.

IDLE2 Mode

The IDLE2 Mode is entered when a HALT instruction is executed and when the FHIDEN bit in the SCC register is high and the FSIDEN bit in the SCC register is low. In the IDLE2 Mode the CPU will be switched off but the high speed oscillator will be turned on to provide a clock source to keep some peripheral functions operational.

Control Registers

The SCC and HIRCC registers are used to control the system clock and the HIRC oscillator configurations.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
SCC	CKS2	CKS1	CKS0	—	—	—	FHIDEN	FSIDEN
HIRCC	—	—	—	—	HIRC1	HIRC0	HIRCF	HIRCEN

System Operating Mode Control Register List

- **SCC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	CKS2	CKS1	CKS0	—	—	—	FHIDEN	FSIDEN
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	—	—	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	—	—	—	0	0

Bit 7~5 **CKS2~CKS0**: System clock selection
000: f_H
001: $f_H/2$
010: $f_H/4$
011: $f_H/8$
100: $f_H/16$
101: $f_H/32$
110: $f_H/64$
111: f_{SUB}
These three bits are used to select which clock is used as the system clock source. In addition to the system clock source directly derived from f_H or f_{SUB}, a divided version of the high speed system oscillator can also be chosen as the system clock source.

Bit 4~2 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 1 **FHIDEN**: High Frequency oscillator control when CPU is switched off
0: Disable
1: Enable
This bit is used to control whether the high speed oscillator is activated or stopped when the CPU is switched off by executing a "HALT" instruction.

Bit 0 **FSIDEN**: Low Frequency oscillator control when CPU is switched off
0: Disable
1: Enable
This bit is used to control whether the low speed oscillator is activated or stopped when the CPU is switched off by executing a "HALT" instruction.

• **HIRCC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	HIRC1	HIRC0	HIRCF	HIRCEN
R/W	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	0	0	0	1

Bit 7~4 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 3~2 **HIRC1~HIRC0**: HIRC frequency selection
00: 2MHz
01: 4MHz
10: 8MHz
11: 2MHz
When the HIRC oscillator is enabled, the HIRC frequency is changed by changing these two bits, the clock frequency will automatically be changed after the HIRCF flag is set to 1.

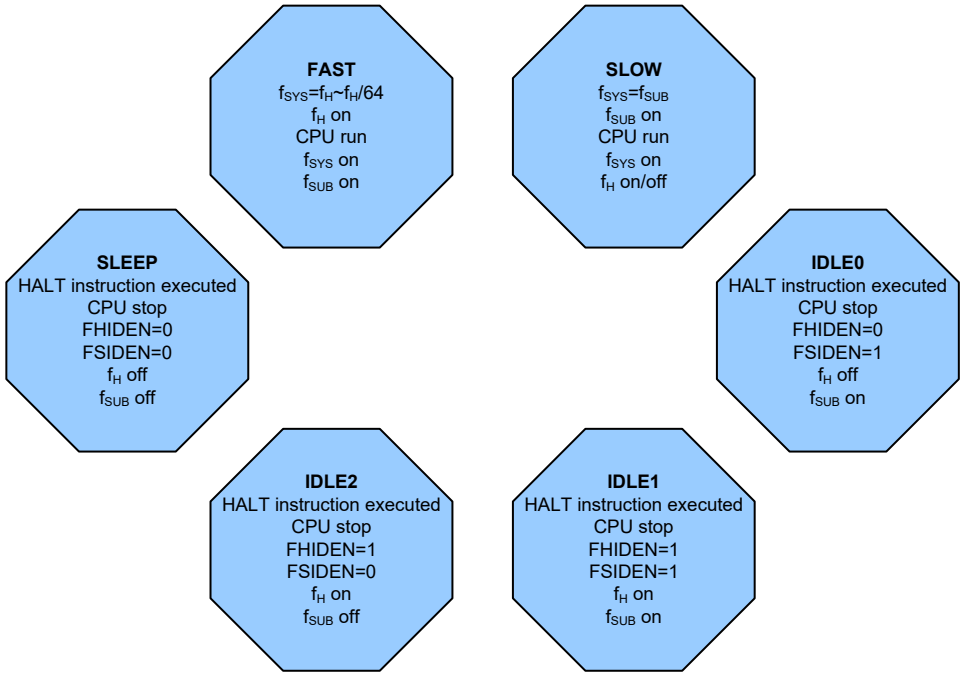
Bit 1 **HIRCF**: HIRC oscillator stable flag
0: HIRC unstable
1: HIRC stable
This bit is used to indicate whether the HIRC oscillator is stable or not. When the HIRCEN bit is set to 1 to enable the HIRC oscillator, the HIRCF bit will first be cleared to 0 and then set to 1 after the HIRC oscillator is stable.

Bit 0 **HIRCEN**: HIRC oscillator enable control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Operating Mode Switching

The device can switch between operating modes dynamically allowing the user to select the best performance/power ratio for the present task in hand. In this way microcontroller operations that do not require high performance can be executed using slower clocks thus requiring less operating current and prolonging battery life in portable applications.

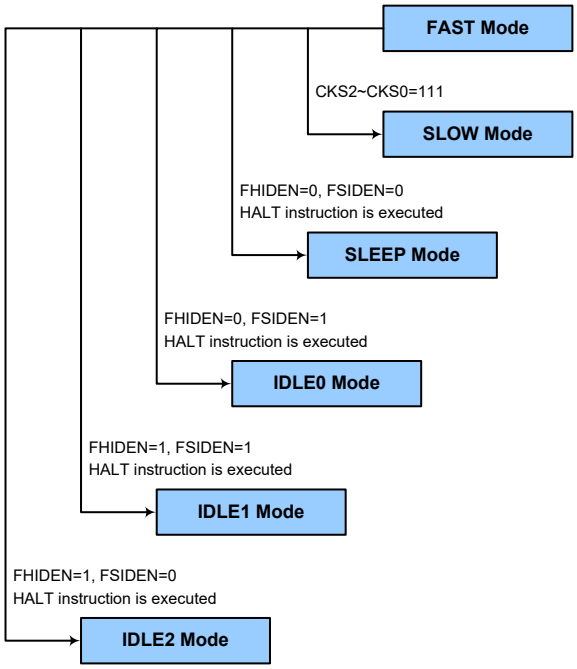
In simple terms, Mode Switching between the FAST Mode and SLOW Mode is executed using the CKS2~CKS0 bits in the SCC register while Mode Switching from the FAST/SLOW Modes to the SLEEP/IDLE Modes is executed via the HALT instruction. When a HALT instruction is executed, whether the device enters the IDLE Mode or the SLEEP Mode is determined by the condition of the FHIDEN and FSIDEN bits in the SCC register.



FAST Mode to SLOW Mode Switching

When running in the FAST Mode, which uses the high speed system oscillator, and therefore consumes more power, the system clock can switch to run in the SLOW Mode by setting the CKS2~CKS0 bits to "111" in the SCC register. This will then use the low speed system oscillator which will consume less power. Users may decide to do this for certain operations which do not require high performance and can subsequently reduce power consumption.

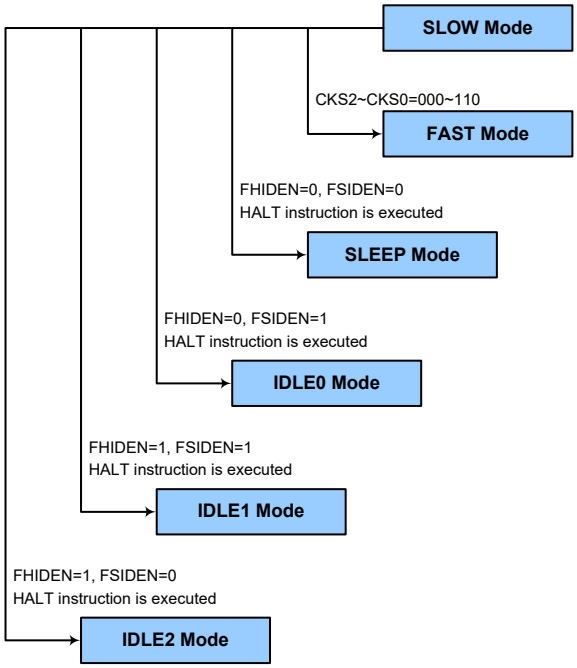
The SLOW Mode system clock is sourced from the LIRC oscillator and therefore requires this oscillator to be stable before full mode switching occurs.



SLOW Mode to FAST Mode Switching

In SLOW mode the system clock is derived from f_{SUB}. When system clock is switched back to the FAST mode from f_{SUB}, the CKS2~CKS0 bits should be set to "000"~"110" and then the system clock will respectively be switched to f_H~f_H/64.

However, if f_H is not used in SLOW mode and thus switched off, it will take some time to re-oscillate and stabilise when switching to the FAST mode from the SLOW Mode. This is monitored using the HIRCF bit in the HIRCC register. The time duration required for the high speed system oscillator stabilization is specified in the System Start Up Time Characteristics.



Entering the SLEEP Mode

There is only one way for the device to enter the SLEEP Mode and that is to execute the "HALT" instruction in the application program with both the FHIDEN and FSIDEN bits in the SCC register equal to "0". In this mode all the clocks and functions will be switched off except the WDT function. When this instruction is executed under the conditions described above, the following will occur:

- The system clock will be stopped and the application program will stop at the "HALT" instruction.
- The Data Memory contents and registers will maintain their present condition.
- The I/O ports will maintain their present conditions.
- In the status register, the Power Down flag, PDF, will be set and the Watchdog time-out flag, TO, will be cleared.
- The WDT will be cleared and resume counting as the WDT function is always enabled.

Entering the IDLE0 Mode

There is only one way for the device to enter the IDLE0 Mode and that is to execute the "HALT" instruction in the application program with the FHIDEN bit in the SCC register equal to "0" and the FSIDEN bit in the SCC register equal to "1". When this instruction is executed under the conditions described above, the following will occur:

- The f_H clock will be stopped and the application program will stop at the "HALT" instruction, but the f_{SUB} clock will be on.
- The Data Memory contents and registers will maintain their present condition.
- The I/O ports will maintain their present conditions.
- In the status register, the Power Down flag, PDF, will be set and the Watchdog time-out flag, TO, will be cleared.
- The WDT will be cleared and resume counting as the WDT function is always enabled.

Entering the IDLE1 Mode

There is only one way for the device to enter the IDLE1 Mode and that is to execute the "HALT" instruction in the application program with both the FHIDEN and FSIDEN bits in the SCC register equal to "1". When this instruction is executed under the conditions described above, the following will occur:

- The f_H and f_{SUB} clocks will be on but the application program will stop at the "HALT" instruction.
- The Data Memory contents and registers will maintain their present condition.
- The I/O ports will maintain their present conditions.
- In the status register, the Power Down flag, PDF, will be set and the Watchdog time-out flag, TO, will be cleared.
- The WDT will be cleared and resume counting as the WDT function is always enabled.

Entering the IDLE2 Mode

There is only one way for the device to enter the IDLE2 Mode and that is to execute the "HALT" instruction in the application program with the FHIDEN bit in the SCC register equal to "1" and the FSIDEN bit in the SCC register equal to "0". When this instruction is executed under the conditions described above, the following will occur:

- The f_H clock will be on but the f_{SUB} clock will be off and the application program will stop at the "HALT" instruction.
- The Data Memory contents and registers will maintain their present condition.
- The I/O ports will maintain their present conditions.
- In the status register, the Power Down flag, PDF, will be set and the Watchdog time-out flag, TO, will be cleared.
- The WDT will be cleared and resume counting as the WDT function is always enabled.

Standby Current Considerations

As the main reason for entering the SLEEP or IDLE Mode is to keep the current consumption of the device to as low a value as possible, perhaps only in the order of several micro-amps except in the IDLE1 and IDLE2 Mode, there are other considerations which must also be taken into account by the circuit designer if the power consumption is to be minimised. Special attention must be made to the I/O pins on the device. All high-impedance input pins must be connected to either a fixed high or low level as any floating input pins could create internal oscillations and result in increased current consumption. This also applies to the device which has different package types, as there may be unbonded pins. These pins must either be setup as outputs or if setup as inputs must have pull-high resistors connected.

Care must also be taken with the loads, which are connected to I/O pins, which are setup as outputs. These should be placed in a condition in which minimum current is drawn or connected only to external circuits that do not draw current, such as other CMOS inputs. Also note that additional standby current will also be required if the LIRC oscillator has been enabled.

In the IDLE1 and IDLE2 Mode the high speed oscillator is on, if the peripheral function clock source is derived from the high speed oscillator, the additional standby current will also be perhaps in the order of several hundred micro-amps.

Wake-up

To minimise power consumption the device can enter the SLEEP or any IDLE Mode, where the CPU will be switched off. However, when the device is woken up again, it will take a considerable time for the original system oscillator to restart, stabilise and allow normal operation to resume.

After the system enters the SLEEP or IDLE Mode, it can be woken up from one of various sources listed as follows:

- An external falling edge on Port A
- A system interrupt
- A WDT overflow

When the device executes the “HALT” instruction, it will enter the IDLE or SLEEP mode and the PDF flag will be set high. The PDF flag is cleared to 0 if the device experiences a system power-up or executes the clear Watchdog Timer instruction.

If the system is woken up by a WDT overflow, a Watchdog Timer Time-out reset will be initiated and the TO flag will be set to 1. The TO flag is set high if a WDT time-out occurs, and causes a wake-up that only resets the Program Counter and Stack Pointer, the other flags remain in their original status.

Each pin on Port A can be setup using the PAWU register to permit a negative transition on the pin to wake-up the system. When a pin wake-up occurs, the program will resume execution at the instruction following the “HALT” instruction.

If the system is woken up by an interrupt, then two possible situations may occur. The first is where the related interrupt is disabled or the interrupt is enabled but the stack is full, in which case the program will resume execution at the instruction following the “HALT” instruction. In this situation, the interrupt which woke-up the device will not be immediately serviced, but will rather be serviced later when the related interrupt is finally enabled or when a stack level becomes free. The other situation is where the related interrupt is enabled and the stack is not full, in which case the regular interrupt response takes place. If an interrupt request flag is set high before entering the SLEEP or IDLE Mode, the wake-up function of the related interrupt will be disabled.

Watchdog Timer

The Watchdog Timer is provided to prevent program malfunctions or sequences from jumping to unknown locations, due to certain uncontrollable external events such as electrical noise.

Watchdog Timer Clock Source

The Watchdog Timer clock source is provided by the internal clock, f_{LIRC} which is sourced from the LIRC oscillator. The LIRC internal oscillator has an approximate frequency of 32kHz and this specified internal clock period can vary with V_{DD}, temperature and process variations. The Watchdog Timer source clock is then subdivided by a ratio of 2^8 to 2^{18} to give longer timeouts, the actual value being chosen using the WS2~WS0 bits in the WDTC register.

Watchdog Timer Control Register

A single register, WDTC, controls the required timeout period as well as the enable and reset MCU operation.

• **WDTC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	WE4	WE3	WE2	WE1	WE0	WS2	WS1	WS0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	1

Bit 7~3 **WE4~WE0**: WDT function software control
01010/10101: Enable
Other: Reset MCU
When these bits are changed by the environmental noise or software setting to reset the microcontroller, the reset operation will be activated after a delay time, t_{SRESET} and the WRF bit in the RSTFC register will be set high.

Bit 2~0 **WS2~WS0**: WDT time-out period selection
000: $2^8/f_{LIRC}$
001: $2^{10}/f_{LIRC}$
010: $2^{12}/f_{LIRC}$
011: $2^{14}/f_{LIRC}$
100: $2^{15}/f_{LIRC}$
101: $2^{16}/f_{LIRC}$
110: $2^{17}/f_{LIRC}$
111: $2^{18}/f_{LIRC}$
These three bits determine the division ratio of the watchdog timer source clock, which in turn determines the time-out period.

• **RSTFC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	LVRF	—	WRF
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	R/W	—	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	—	x	—	0

"x": unknown

Bit 7~3 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 2 **LVRF**: LVR function reset flag
Refer to the Low Voltage Reset section.

Bit 1 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 0 **WRF**: WDTC register software reset flag
0: Not occurred
1: Occurred
This bit is set to 1 by the WDTC register software reset and cleared to zero by the application program. Note that this bit can be cleared to zero only by the application program.

Watchdog Timer Operation

The Watchdog Timer operates by providing a device reset when its timer overflows. This means that in the application program and during normal operation the user has to strategically clear the Watchdog Timer before it overflows to prevent the Watchdog Timer from executing a reset. This is done using the clear watchdog instruction. If the program malfunctions for whatever reason, jumps to an unknown location, or enters an endless loop, the clear instruction will not be executed in the correct manner, in which case the Watchdog Timer will overflow and reset the device. There are five bits, WE4~WE0, in the WDTC register to offer the enable control and reset control of the Watchdog Timer. The WDT function will be enabled if the WE4~WE0 bits are equal to 01010B or 10101B. If the WE4~WE0 bits are set to any other values, other than 01010B and 10101B, it will reset the device after a delay time, t_{SRESET}. After power on these bits will have a value of 01010B.

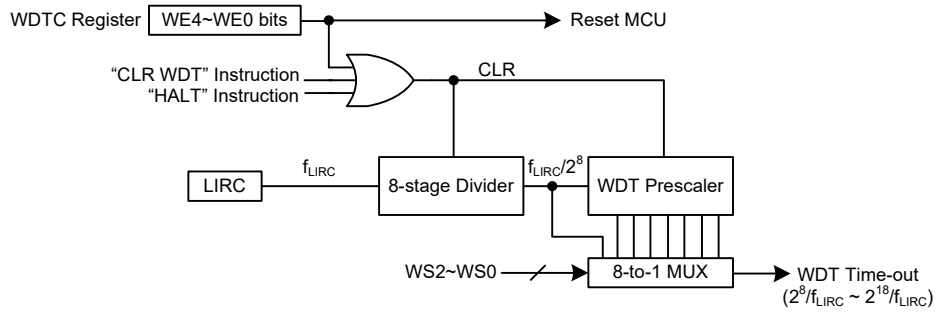
WE4~WE0 Bits	WDT Function
01010B or 10101B	Enable
Any other values	Reset MCU

Watchdog Timer Enable Control

Under normal program operation, a Watchdog Timer time-out will initialise a device reset and set the status bit TO high. However, if the system is in the SLEEP or IDLE Mode, when a Watchdog Timer time-out occurs, the TO bit in the status register will be set high and only the Program Counter and Stack Pointer will be reset. Three methods can be adopted to clear the contents of the Watchdog Timer. The first is a WDTC software reset, which means a certain value except 01010B and 10101B written into the WE4~WE0 bits, the second is using the Watchdog Timer software clear instruction and the third is via a HALT instruction.

There is only one method of using software instruction to clear the Watchdog Timer. That is to use the single "CLR WDT" instruction to clear the WDT.

The maximum time out period is when the 2^{18} division ratio is selected. As an example, with a 32kHz LIRC oscillator as its source clock, this will give a maximum watchdog period of around 8 seconds for the 2^{18} division ratio, and a minimum timeout of 8ms for the 2^8 division ration.



Watchdog Timer

Reset and Initialisation

A reset function is a fundamental part of any microcontroller ensuring that the device can be set to some predetermined condition irrespective of outside parameters. The most important reset condition is after power is first applied to the microcontroller. In this case, internal circuitry will ensure that the microcontroller, after a short delay, will be in a well-defined state and ready to execute the first program instruction. After this power-on reset, certain important internal registers will be set to defined states before the program commences. One of these registers is the Program Counter, which will be reset to zero forcing the microcontroller to begin program execution from the lowest Program Memory address.

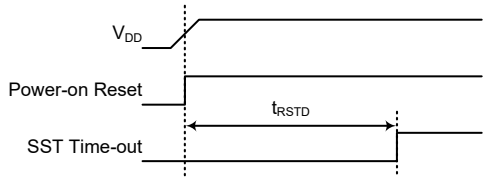
Another reset exists in the form of a Low Voltage Reset, LVR, where a full reset is implemented in situations where the power supply voltage falls below a certain threshold. Another type of reset is when the Watchdog Timer overflows and resets the microcontroller. All types of reset operations result in different register conditions being setup.

Reset Functions

There are several ways in which a microcontroller reset can occur, through events occurring internally.

Power-on Reset

The most fundamental and unavoidable reset is the one that occurs after power is first applied to the microcontroller. As well as ensuring that the Program Memory begins execution from the first memory address, a power-on reset also ensures that certain other registers are preset to known conditions. All the I/O port and port control registers will power up in a high condition ensuring that all pins will be first set to inputs.



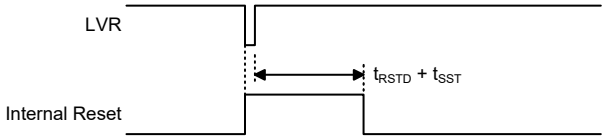
Power-on Reset Timing Chart

Low Voltage Reset – LVR

The microcontroller contains a low voltage reset circuit in order to monitor the supply voltage of the device and provide an MCU reset when the value falls below a certain predefined level.

The LVR function is always enabled in normal operation with a specific LVR voltage V_{LVR}. For the device the V_{LVR} value is fixed at 2.1V. If the supply voltage of the device drop to within a range of 0.9V~V_{LVR} such as might occur when changing the battery in battery powered applications, the LVR will automatically reset the device internally and the LVRF bit in the RSTFC register will also be set to 1. For a valid LVR signal, a low supply voltage, i.e., a voltage in the range between 0.9V~V_{LVR} must exist for a time greater than that specified by t_{LVR} in the LVD & LVR Electrical Characteristics. If the low supply voltage state does not exceed this value, the LVR will ignore the low supply voltage and will not perform a reset function.

Note that the LVR function will be automatically disabled when the device enters the SLEEP or IDLE mode.



Low Voltage Reset Timing Chart

- **RSTFC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	LVRF	—	WRF
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	R/W	—	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	—	x	—	0

"x": unknown

Bit 7~3 Unimplemented, read as "0"

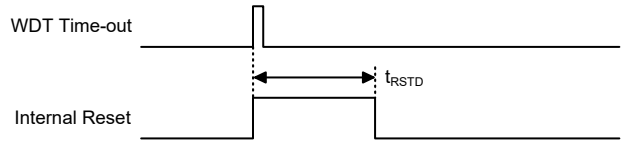
Bit 2 **LVRF**: LVR function reset flag
0: Not occurred
1: Occurred
This bit is set to 1 when an actual Low Voltage Reset situation condition occurs. This bit can only be cleared to 0 by the application program.

Bit 1 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 0 **WRF**: WDTC register software reset flag
Refer to the Watchdog Timer Control Register section.

Watchdog Time-out Reset during Normal Operation

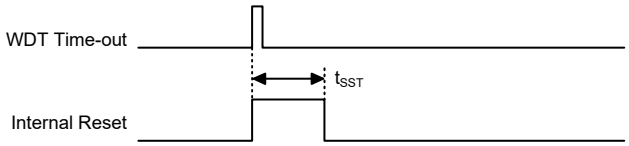
The Watchdog Time-out Reset during normal operation in the FAST or SLOW mode is the same as a Power On reset except that the Watchdog time-out flag TO will be set to "1".



WDT Time-out Reset during Normal Operation Timing Chart

Watchdog Time-out Reset during SLEEP or IDLE Mode

The Watchdog Time-out Reset during SLEEP or IDLE Mode is a little different from other kinds of reset. Most of the conditions remain unchanged except that the Program Counter and the Stack Pointer will be cleared to "0" and the TO flag will be set to "1". Refer to the System Start Up Time Characteristics for t_{SST} details.



WDT Time-out Reset during SLEEP or IDLE Timing Chart

Reset Initial Conditions

The different types of reset described affect the reset flags in different ways. These flags, known as PDF and TO are located in the status register and are controlled by various microcontroller operations, such as the SLEEP or IDLE Mode function or Watchdog Timer. The reset flags are shown in the table:

TO	PDF	Reset Conditions
0	0	Power-on reset
u	u	LVR reset during FAST or SLOW Mode operation
1	u	WDT time-out reset during FAST or SLOW Mode operation
1	1	WDT time-out reset during IDLE or SLEEP Mode operation

"u" stands for unchanged

The following table indicates the way in which the various components of the microcontroller are affected after a power-on reset occurs.

Item	Condition after Reset
Program Counter	Reset to zero
Interrupts	All interrupts will be disabled
WDT, Time Bases	Cleared after reset, WDT begins counting
Timer Modules	Timer Modules will be turned off
Input/Output Ports	I/O ports will be setup as inputs
Stack Pointer	Stack Pointer will point to the top of the stack

The different kinds of resets all affect the internal registers of the microcontroller in different ways. To ensure reliable continuation of normal program execution after a reset occurs, it is important to know what condition the microcontroller is in after a particular reset occurs. The following table describes how each type of reset affects each of the microcontroller internal registers. Note that where more than one package type exists the table will reflect the situation for the larger package type.

Register	Power On Reset	WDT Time-out (Normal Operation)	WDT Time-out (IDLE/SLEEP)
IAR0	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
MP0	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
IAR1	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
MP1L	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
MP1H	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
ACC	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
PCL	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000
TBLP	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TBLH	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TBHP	---- xxxx	---- uuuu	---- uuuu
STATUS	xx00 xxxx	uu1u uuuu	uu11 uuuu
IAR2	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
MP2L	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
MP2H	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
RSTFC	---- -x-0	---- -u-u	---- -u-u
TB0C	0--- -000	0--- -000	u--- -uuu
TB1C	0--- -000	0--- -000	u--- -uuu
SCC	000- --00	000- --00	uuu- --uu
HIRCC	---- 0001	---- 0001	---- uuuu

Register	Power On Reset	WDT Time-out (Normal Operation)	WDT Time-out (IDLE/SLEEP)
PA	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
PAC	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
PAPU	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PAWU	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PB	---1 1111	---1 1111	---u uuuu
PBC	---1 1111	---1 1111	---u uuuu
PBPU	---0 0000	---0 0000	---u uuuu
PC	---1 1111	---1 1111	---u uuuu
PCC	---1 1111	---1 1111	---u uuuu
PCPU	---0 0000	---0 0000	---u uuuu
SLEDC0	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
SLEDC1	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- uuuu
PSCR	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
LVDC	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
ORMC	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000
CTM0C0	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
CTM0C1	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
CTM0DL	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
CTM0DH	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
CTM0AL	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
CTM0AH	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
SADOH	xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu (ADRFS=0)
			---- --uu (ADRFS=1)
SADOL	xx-- ----	xx-- ----	uu-- ---- (ADRFS=0)
			uuuu uuuu (ADRFS=1)
SADC0	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
SADC1	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PLTSW	---- -000	---- -000	---- -uuu
PLTDACC	---- -000	---- -000	---- -uuu
PLTDA0L	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
PLTDA1L	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
PLTDA2L	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
PLTC0C	000- 0000	000- 0000	uuu- uuuu
PLTC0VOS	-001 0000	-001 0000	-uuu uuuu
PLTC1C	000- 0000	000- 0000	uuu- uuuu
PLTC1VOS	-001 0000	-001 0000	-uuu uuuu
PLTCHYC	-000 0000	-000 0000	-uuu uuuu
PLTAC	-00- ---0	-00- ---0	-uu- ---u
PLTAVOS	0010 0000	0010 0000	uuuu uuuu
WDTC	0101 0011	0101 0011	uuuu uuuu
EEA	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
EED	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
USR	0000 1011	0000 1011	uuuu uuuu
UCR1	0000 00x0	0000 00x0	uuuu uuuu
UCR2	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu

Register	Power On Reset	WDT Time-out (Normal Operation)	WDT Time-out (IDLE/SLEEP)
UCR3	---- ---0	---- ---0	---- ---u
TXR_RXR	xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
BRG	xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
INTEG	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- uuuu
INTC0	-000 0000	-000 0000	-uuu uuuu
INTC1	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
INTC2	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
INTC3	--00 --00	--00 --00	--uu --uu
MFI0	--00 --00	--00 --00	--uu --uu
MFI1	--00 --00	--00 --00	--uu --uu
MFI2	--00 --00	--00 --00	--uu --uu
MFI3	--00 --00	--00 --00	--uu --uu
MFI4	--00 --00	--00 --00	--uu --uu
PTM0C0	0000 0---	0000 0---	uuuu u---
PTM0C1	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PTM0C2	---- -000	---- -000	---- -uuu
PTM0DL	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PTM0DH	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
PTM0AL	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PTM0AH	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
PTM0BL	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PTM0BH	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
PTM0RPL	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PTM0RPH	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
PTM1C0	0000 0---	0000 0---	uuuu u---
PTM1C1	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PTM1DL	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PTM1DH	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
PTM1AL	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PTM1AH	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
PTM1RPL	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PTM1RPH	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
CTM1C0	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
CTM1C1	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
CTM1DL	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
CTM1DH	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
CTM1AL	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
CTM1AH	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
PAS0	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PAS1	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PBS0	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PCS0	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PCS1	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
IFS	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- uuuu
EEC	0--- 0000	0--- 0000	0--- uuuu

Note: “u” stands for unchanged
“x” stands for unknown
“-” stands for unimplemented

Input/Output Ports

Holtek microcontrollers offer considerable flexibility on their I/O ports. With the input or output designation of every pin fully under user program control, pull-high selections for all ports and wake-up selections on certain pins, the user is provided with an I/O structure to meet the needs of a wide range of application possibilities.

The device provides bidirectional input/output lines labeled with port names PA~PC. These I/O ports are mapped to the RAM Data Memory with specific addresses as shown in the Special Purpose Data Memory table. All of these I/O ports can be used for input and output operations. For input operation, these ports are non-latching, which means the inputs must be ready at the T2 rising edge of instruction "MOV A, [m]", where m denotes the port address. For output operation, all the data is latched and remains unchanged until the output latch is rewritten.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PA	PA7	PA6	PA5	PA4	PA3	PA2	PA1	PA0
PAC	PAC7	PAC6	PAC5	PAC4	PAC3	PAC2	PAC1	PAC0
PAPU	PAPU7	PAPU6	PAPU5	PAPU4	PAPU3	PAPU2	PAPU1	PAPU0
PAWU	PAWU7	PAWU6	PAWU5	PAWU4	PAWU3	PAWU2	PAWU1	PAWU0
PB	—	—	—	PB4	PB3	PB2	PB1	PB0
PBC	—	—	—	PBC4	PBC3	PBC2	PBC1	PBC0
PBPU	—	—	—	PBPU4	PBPU3	PBPU2	PBPU1	PBPU0
PC	—	—	—	PC4	PC3	PC2	PC1	PC0
PCC	—	—	—	PCC4	PCC3	PCC2	PCC1	PCC0
PCPU	—	—	—	PCPU4	PCPU3	PCPU2	PCPU1	PCPU0

"—": Unimplemented, read as "0"

I/O Logic Function Register List

Pull-high Resistors

Many product applications require pull-high resistors for their switch inputs usually requiring the use of an external resistor. To eliminate the need for these external resistors, all I/O pins, when configured as a digital input have the capability of being connected to an internal pull-high resistor. These pull-high resistors are selected using registers PAPU~PCPU, and are implemented using weak PMOS transistors.

Note that the pull-high resistor can be controlled by the relevant pull-high control register only when the pin-shared functional pin is selected as a digital input or NMOS output. Otherwise, the pull-high resistors cannot be enabled.

- **PxPU Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PxPU7	PxPU6	PxPU5	PxPU4	PxPU3	PxPU2	PxPU1	PxPU0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PxPUn: I/O Port x Pin pull-high function control
0: Disable
1: Enable

The PxPUn bit is used to control the pin pull-high function. Here the "x" can be A, B and C. However, the actual available bits for each I/O Port may be different.

Port A Wake-up

The HALT instruction forces the microcontroller into the SLEEP or IDLE Mode which preserves power, a feature that is important for battery and other low-power applications. Various methods exist to wake-up the microcontroller, one of which is to change the logic condition on one of the Port A pins from high to low. This function is especially suitable for applications that can be woken up via external switches. Each pin on Port A can be selected individually to have this wake-up feature using the PAWU register.

Note that the wake-up function can be controlled by the wake-up control registers only when the pin is selected as a general purpose input and the MCU enters the IDLE or SLEEP mode.

• **PAWU Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PAWU7	PAWU6	PAWU5	PAWU4	PAWU3	PAWU2	PAWU1	PAWU0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **PAWU7~PAWU0**: PA7~PA0 wake-up function control
0: Disable
1: Enable

I/O Port Control Registers

Each I/O port has its own control register known as PAC~PCC, to control the input/output configuration. With this control register, each CMOS output or input can be reconfigured dynamically under software control. Each pin of the I/O ports is directly mapped to a bit in its associated port control register. For the I/O pin to function as an input, the corresponding bit of the control register must be written as a "1". This will then allow the logic state of the input pin to be directly read by instructions. When the corresponding bit of the control register is written as a "0", the I/O pin will be setup as a CMOS output. If the pin is currently setup as an output, instructions can still be used to read the output register. However, it should be noted that the program will in fact only read the status of the output data latch and not the actual logic status of the output pin.

• **PxC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PxC7	PxC6	PxC5	PxC4	PxC3	PxC2	PxC1	PxC0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

PxCn: I/O Port x Pin type selection
0: Output
1: Input
The PxCn bit is used to control the pin type selection. Here the "x" can be A, B and C. However, the actual available bits for each I/O Port may be different.

I/O Port Source Current Control

Each pin in this device can be configured with different output source current which is selected by the corresponding source current selection bits. These source current selection bits are available when the corresponding pin is configured as a CMOS output. Otherwise, these select bits have no effect. Users should refer to the Input/Output Characteristics section to obtain the exact value for different applications.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
SLEDC0	SLEDC07	SLEDC06	SLEDC05	SLEDC04	SLEDC03	SLEDC02	SLEDC01	SLEDC00
SLEDC1	—	—	—	—	SLEDC13	SLEDC12	SLEDC11	SLEDC10

Source Current Selection Register List

• SLEDC0 Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	SLEDC07	SLEDC06	SLEDC05	SLEDC04	SLEDC03	SLEDC02	SLEDC01	SLEDC00
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 **SLEDC07~SLEDC06**: PB4 source current selection
00: Source current=Level 0 (Min.)
01: Source current=Level 1
10: Source current=Level 2
11: Source current=Level 3 (Max.)

Bit 5~4 **SLEDC05~SLEDC04**: PB3~PB0 source current selection
00: Source current=Level 0 (Min.)
01: Source current=Level 1
10: Source current=Level 2
11: Source current=Level 3 (Max.)

Bit 3~2 **SLEDC03~SLEDC02**: PA7~PA4 source current selection
00: Source current=Level 0 (Min.)
01: Source current=Level 1
10: Source current=Level 2
11: Source current=Level 3 (Max.)

Bit 1~0 **SLEDC01~SLEDC00**: PA3~PA0 source current selection
00: Source current=Level 0 (Min.)
01: Source current=Level 1
10: Source current=Level 2
11: Source current=Level 3 (Max.)

• SLEDC1 Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	SLEDC13	SLEDC12	SLEDC11	SLEDC10
R/W	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~4 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 3~2 **SLEDC13~SLEDC12**: PC4 source current selection
00: Source current=Level 0 (Min.)
01: Source current=Level 1
10: Source current=Level 2
11: Source current=Level 3 (Max.)

Bit 1~0 **SLEDC11~SLEDC10**: PC3~PC0 source current selection
00: Source current=Level 0 (Min.)
01: Source current=Level 1
10: Source current=Level 2
11: Source current=Level 3 (Max.)

Pin-shared Functions

The flexibility of the microcontroller range is greatly enhanced by the use of pins that have more than one function. Limited numbers of pins can force serious design constraints on designers but by supplying pins with multi-functions, many of these difficulties can be overcome. For these pins, the desired function of the multi-function I/O pins is selected by a series of registers via the application program control.

Pin-shared Function Selection Registers

The limited number of supplied pins in a package can impose restrictions on the amount of functions a certain device can contain. However, by allowing the same pins to share several different functions and providing a means of function selection, a wide range of different functions can be incorporated into even relatively small package sizes. The device includes Port "x" Output Function Selection register "n", labeled as PxSn, and Input Function Selection register, labeled as IFS, which can select the desired functions of the multi-function pin-shared pins.

The most important point to note is to make sure that the desired pin-shared function is properly selected and also deselected. For most pin-shared functions, to select the desired pin-shared function, the pin-shared function should first be correctly selected using the corresponding pin-shared control register. After that the corresponding peripheral functional setting should be configured and then the peripheral function can be enabled. However, a special point must be noted for some digital input pins, such as INTn, xTCKn, xTPnI, etc, which share the same pin-shared control configuration with their corresponding general purpose I/O functions when setting the relevant pin-shared control bit fields. To select these pin functions, in addition to the necessary pin-shared control and peripheral functional setup aforementioned, they must also be set as an input by setting the corresponding bit in the I/O port control register. To correctly deselect the pin-shared function, the peripheral function should first be disabled and then the corresponding pin-shared function control register can be modified to select other pin-shared functions.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PAS0	PAS07	PAS06	PAS05	PAS04	PAS03	PAS02	PAS01	PAS00
PAS1	PAS17	PAS16	PAS15	PAS14	PAS13	PAS12	PAS11	PAS10
PBS0	PBS07	PBS06	PBS05	PBS04	PBS03	PBS02	PBS01	PBS00
PCS0	PCS07	PCS06	PCS05	PCS04	PCS03	PCS02	PCS01	PCS00
PCS1	—	—	—	—	—	—	PCS11	PCS10
IFS	—	—	—	—	IFS3	IFS2	IFS1	IFS0

Pin-shared Function Selection Register List

• **PAS0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PAS07	PAS06	PAS05	PAS04	PAS03	PAS02	PAS01	PAS00
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 **PAS07~PAS06**: PA3 Pin-shared function selection
00: PA3
01: TX
10: PTP0B
11: AN3

Bit 5~4 **PAS05~PAS04**: PA2 Pin-shared function selection
00: PA2
01: RX/TX
10: PTP1
11: PA2

Bit 3~2 **PAS03~PAS02**: PA1 Pin-shared function selection
00: PA1/INT1
01: AN2
10: PA1/INT1
11: PA1/INT1

Bit 1~0 **PAS01~PAS00**: PA0 Pin-shared function selection
00: PA0
01: CTP1
10: PA0
11: PA0

• **PAS1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PAS17	PAS16	PAS15	PAS14	PAS13	PAS12	PAS11	PAS10
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 **PAS17~PAS16**: PA7 Pin-shared function selection
00: PA7/PTP0I
01: AN1
10: PA7/PTP0I
11: PA7/PTP0I

Bit 5~4 **PAS15~PAS14**: PA6 Pin-shared function selection
00: PA6
01: PTP0
10: RX/TX
11: VREF

Bit 3~2 **PAS13~PAS12**: PA5 Pin-shared function selection
00: PA5/CTCK0
01: PTP1B
10: CTP1B
11: PA5/CTCK0

Bit 1~0 **PAS11~PAS10**: PA4 Pin-shared function selection
00: PA4/PTCK0
01: CTP0B
10: AN0
11: PA4/PTCK0

• **PBS0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PBS07	PBS06	PBS05	PBS04	PBS03	PBS02	PBS01	PBS00
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 **PBS07~PBS06**: PB3 Pin-shared function selection
00: PB3
01: PLRX
10: RX/TX
11: PB3

Bit 5~4 **PBS05~PBS04**: PB2 Pin-shared function selection
00: PB2
01: PLIS
10: PB2
11: PB2

Bit 3~2 **PBS03~PBS02**: PB1 Pin-shared function selection
00: PB1
01: PLTX
10: TX
11: PB1

Bit 1~0 **PBS01~PBS00**: PB0 Pin-shared function selection
00: PB0/INT0
01: CTP0
10: PB0/INT0
11: PB0/INT0

• **PCS0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PCS07	PCS06	PCS05	PCS04	PCS03	PCS02	PCS01	PCS00
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 **PCS07~PCS06**: PC3 Pin-shared function selection
00: PC3/PTCK1
01: PTP0B
10: PC3/PTCK1
11: PC3/PTCK1

Bit 5~4 **PCS05~PCS04**: PC2 Pin-shared function selection
00: PC2
01: PTP0
10: PC2
11: PC2

Bit 3~2 **PCS03~PCS02**: PC1 Pin-shared function selection
00: PC1/CTCK1
01: CTP1
10: TX
11: PC1/CTCK1

Bit 1~0 **PCS01~PCS00**: PC0 Pin-shared function selection
00: PC0
01: PTP1
10: PC0
11: PC0

• **PCS1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	PCS11	PCS10
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	0

Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 1~0 **PCS11~PCS10**: PC4 Pin-shared function selection
00: PC4
01: PTP1B
10: PC4
11: PC4

• **IFS Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	IFS3	IFS2	IFS1	IFS0
R/W	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	0	0	0	0

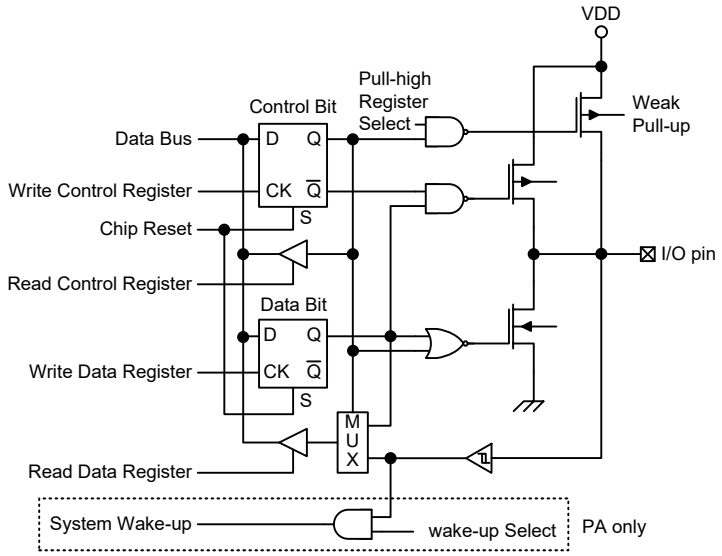
Bit 7~4 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 3~2 **IFS3~IFS2**: PTP0I input source selection
00: CXCAP
01: PA7
10: CXCAP
11: CXCAP
The CXCAP signal is from the Power Line Transceiver comparator output signal.

Bit 1~0 **IFS1~IFS0**: RX/TX input source pin selection
00: PA2
01: PA6
10: PB3
11: PA2

I/O Pin Structures

The accompanying diagram illustrates the internal structures of the I/O logic function. As the exact logical construction of the I/O pin will differ from this diagram, it is supplied as a guide only to assist with the functional understanding of the logic function I/O pins. The wide range of pin-shared structures does not permit all types to be shown.



Logic Function Input/Output Structure

Programming Considerations

Within the user program, one of the first things to consider is port initialisation. After a reset, all of the I/O data and port control registers will be set high. This means that all I/O pins will default to an input state, the level of which depends on the other connected circuitry and whether pull-high selections have been chosen. If the port control registers are then programmed to setup some pins as outputs, these output pins will have an initial high output value unless the associated port data registers are first programmed. Selecting which pins are inputs and which are outputs can be achieved byte-wide by loading the correct values into the appropriate port control register or by programming individual bits in the port control register using the "SET [m].i" and "CLR [m].i" instructions. Note that when using these bit control instructions, a read-modify-write operation takes place. The microcontroller must first read in the data on the entire port, modify it to the required new bit values and then rewrite this data back to the output ports.

Port A has the additional capability of providing wake-up functions. When the device is in the SLEEP or IDLE Mode, various methods are available to wake the device up. One of these is a high to low transition of any of the Port A pins. Single or multiple pins on Port A can be setup to have this function.

Timer Modules – TM

One of the most fundamental functions in any microcontroller device is the ability to control and measure time. To implement time related functions the device includes several Timer Modules, abbreviated to the name TM. The TMs are multi-purpose timing units and serve to provide operations such as Timer/Counter, Input Capture, Compare Match Output and Single Pulse Output as well as being the functional unit for the generation of PWM signals. Each of the TMs has two individual interrupts. The addition of input and output pins for each TM ensures that users are provided with timing units with a wide and flexible range of features.

The common features of the different TM types are described here with more detailed information provided in the individual Compact and Periodic Type TM sections.

Introduction

The device contains four TMs and each individual TM can be categorised as a certain type, namely Compact Type TM and Periodic Type TM. Although similar in nature, the different TM types vary in their feature complexity. The common features to all of the Compact and Periodic TMs will be described in this section. The detailed operation regarding each of the TM types will be described in separate sections. The main features and differences between the two types of TMs are summarised in the accompanying table.

Function	CTM	PTM
Timer/Counter	√	√
Input Capture	—	√
Compare Match Output	√	√
PWM Output	√	√
Single Pulse Output	—	√
PWM Alignment	Edge	Edge
PWM Adjustment Period & Duty	Duty or Period	Duty or Period

TM Function Summary

TM Operation

The different types of TM offer a diverse range of functions, from simple timing operations to PWM signal generation. The key to understanding how the TM operates is to see it in terms of a free running counter whose value is then compared with the value of pre-programmed internal comparators. When the free running count-up counter has the same value as the pre-programmed comparator, known as a compare match situation, a TM interrupt signal will be generated which can clear the counter and perhaps also change the condition of the TM output pin. The internal TM counter is driven by a user selectable clock source, which can be an internal clock or an external pin.

TM Clock Source

The clock source which drives the main counter in each TM can originate from various sources. The selection of the required clock source is implemented using the xTnCK2~xTnCK0 bits in the xTM control registers, where “x” stands for C or P type TM and “n” stands for the specific TM serial number. The clock source can be a ratio of the system clock f_{SYS} or the internal high clock f_H, the f_{SUB} clock source or the external xTCKn pin. The xTCKn pin clock source is used to allow an external signal to drive the TM as an external clock source or for event counting.

TM Interrupts

The Compact and Periodic type TMs each have two internal interrupts, one for each of the internal comparator A or comparator P, which generate a TM interrupt when a compare match condition occurs. When a TM interrupt is generated it can be used to clear the counter and also to change the state of the TM output pin.

TM External Pins

Each of the TMs, irrespective of what type, has one or two TM input pins, with the label xTCKn and PTPnI respectively. The xTMn input pin, xTCKn, is essentially a clock source for the xTMn and is selected using the xTnCK2~xTnCK0 bits in the xTMnC0 register. This external TM input pin allows an external clock source to drive the internal TM. The xTCKn input pin can be chosen to have either a rising or falling active edge. The PTCKn pin is also used as the external trigger input pin in single pulse output mode for the PTMn.

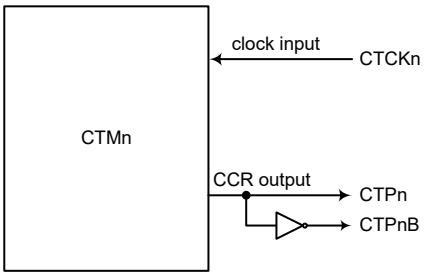
The other PTMn input pin, PTPnI, is the capture input whose active edge can be a rising edge, a falling edge or both rising and falling edges and the active edge transition type is selected using the PTnIO1~PTnIO0 bits in the PTMnC1 register. There is another capture input, PTCKn, for PTMn capture input mode, which can be used as the external trigger input source.

The TMs each have two output pins, xTPn and xTPnB. The xTPnB pin outputs the inverted signal of the xTPn. When the TM is in the Compare Match Output Mode, these pins can be controlled by the TM to switch to a high or low level or to toggle when a compare match situation occurs. The external xTPn and xTPnB output pin are also the pins where the TM generates the PWM output waveform.

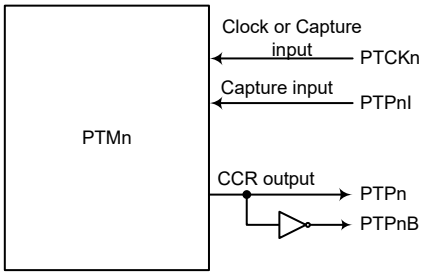
As the TM input and output pins are pin-shared with other functions, the TM input and output functions must first be setup using the relevant pin-shared function selection. The details of the pin-shared function selection are described in the pin-shared function section.

CTMn		PTMn	
Input	Output	Input	Output
CTCKn	CTPn, CTPnB	PTCKn, PTPnI	PTPn, PTPnB

TM External Pins (n=0~1)



CTMn Function Pin Block Diagram (n=0~1)

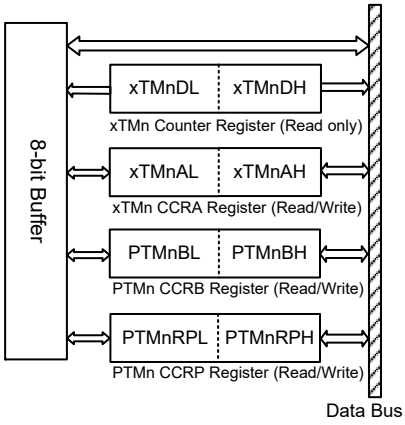


PTMn Function Pin Block Diagram (n=0~1)

Programming Considerations

The TM Counter Registers and the Capture/Compare CCRA, CCRB and CCRP registers, all have a low and high byte structure. The high bytes can be directly accessed, but as the low bytes can only be accessed via an internal 8-bit buffer, reading or writing to these register pairs must be carried out in a specific way. The important point to note is that data transfer to and from the 8-bit buffer and its related low byte only takes place when a write or read operation to its corresponding high byte is executed.

As the CCRA, CCRB and CCRP registers are implemented in the way shown in the following diagram and accessing these register pairs is carried out in a specific way as described above, it is recommended to use the "MOV" instruction to access the CCRA, CCRB and CCRP low byte registers, named xTMnAL, PTMnBL, PTMnRPL, using the following access procedures. Accessing the CCRA, CCRB or CCRP low byte register without following these access procedures will result in unpredictable values.

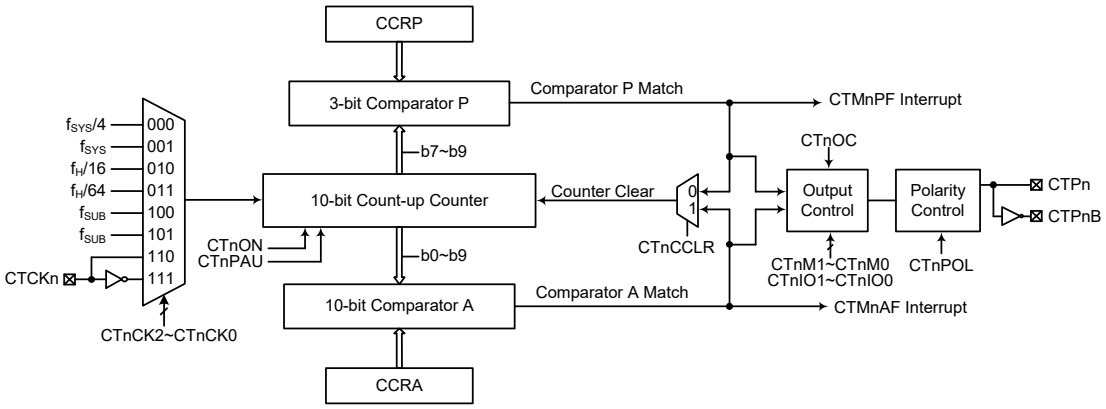


The following steps show the read and write procedures:

- Writing Data to CCRA, CCRB or CCRP
  - Step 1. Write data to Low Byte xTMnAL, PTMnBL or PTMnRPL
    - Note that here data is only written to the 8-bit buffer.
  - Step 2. Write data to High Byte xTMnAH, PTMnBH or PTMnRPH
    - Here data is written directly to the high byte registers and simultaneously data is latched from the 8-bit buffer to the Low Byte registers.
- Reading Data from the Counter Registers, CCRA, CCRB or CCRP
  - Step 1. Read data from the High Byte xTMnDH, xTMnAH, PTMnBH or PTMnRPH
    - Here data is read directly from the High Byte registers and simultaneously data is latched from the Low Byte register into the 8-bit buffer.
  - Step 2. Read data from the Low Byte xTMnDL, xTMnAL, PTMnBL or PTMnRPL
    - This step reads data from the 8-bit buffer.

Compact Type TM – CTM

The Compact type TM contains three operating modes, which are Compare Match Output, Timer/ Event Counter and PWM Output modes. The Compact type TM can also be controlled with an external input pin and can drive two external output pins.



Note: 1. As the CTMn external pins are pin-shared with other functions, the relevant pin-shared control bits should be properly configured before using these pins.

2. The CTPnB is the inverted signal of the CTPn.

10-bit Compact Type TM Block Diagram (n=0~1)

Compact Type TM Operation

Its core is a 10-bit count-up counter which is driven by a user selectable internal or external clock source. There are also two internal comparators with the names, Comparator A and Comparator P. These comparators will compare the value in the counter with CCRP and CCRA registers. The CCRP is three bits wide whose value is compared with the highest three bits in the counter while the CCRA is the ten bits and therefore compares with all counter bits.

The only way of changing the value of the 10-bit counter using the application program, is to clear the counter by changing the CTnON bit from low to high. The counter will also be cleared automatically by a counter overflow or a compare match with one of its associated comparators. When these conditions occur, a CTMn interrupt signal will also usually be generated. The Compact Type TM can operate in a number of different operational modes, can be driven by different clock sources including an input pin and can also control two output pins. All operating setup conditions are selected using relevant internal registers.

Compact Type TM Register Description

Overall operation of the Compact type TM is controlled using several registers. A read only register pair exists to store the internal counter 10-bit value, while a read/write register pair exists to store the internal 10-bit CCRA value. The remaining two registers are control registers which setup the different operating and control modes as well as the three CCRP bits.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
CTMnC0	CTnPAU	CTnCK2	CTnCK1	CTnCK0	CTnON	CTnRP2	CTnRP1	CTnRP0
CTMnC1	CTnM1	CTnM0	CTnIO1	CTnIO0	CTnOC	CTnPOL	CTnDPX	CTnCCLR
CTMnDL	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
CTMnDH	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8
CTMnAL	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
CTMnAH	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8

10-bit Compact Type TM Register List (n=0~1)

- **CTMnC0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	CTnPAU	CTnCK2	CTnCK1	CTnCK0	CTnON	CTnRP2	CTnRP1	CTnRP0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 **CTnPAU**: CTMn counter pause control
0: Run
1: Pause

The counter can be paused by setting this bit high. Clearing the bit to zero restores normal counter operation. When in a Pause condition the CTMn will remain powered up and continue to consume power. The counter will retain its residual value when this bit changes from low to high and resume counting from this value when the bit changes to a low value again.

Bit 6~4 **CTnCK2~CTnCK0**: Select CTMn counter clock
000: $f_{SYS}/4$
001: f_{SYS}
010: $f_H/16$
011: $f_H/64$
100: f_{SUB}
101: f_{SUB}
110: CTCKn rising edge clock
111: CTCKn falling edge clock

These three bits are used to select the clock source for the CTMn. The external pin clock source can be chosen to be active on the rising or falling edge. The clock source f_{SYS} is the system clock, while f_H and f_{SUB} are other internal clocks, the details of which can be found in the Oscillators section.

Bit 3 **CTnON**: CTMn counter on/off control
0: Off
1: On

This bit controls the overall on/off function of the CTMn. Setting the bit high enables the counter to run, clearing the bit to 0 disables the CTMn. Clearing this bit to zero will stop the counter from counting and turn off the CTMn which will reduce its power consumption. When the bit changes state from low to high the internal counter value will be reset to zero, however when the bit changes from high to low, the internal counter will retain its residual value until the bit returns high again.

If the CTMn is in the Compare Match Output Mode or the PWM Output Mode then the CTMn output pin will be reset to its initial condition, as specified by the CTnOC bit, when the CTnON bit changes from low to high.

Bit 2~0 **CTnRP2~CTnRP0**: CTMn CCRP 3-bit register, compared with the CTMn counter bit 9~bit 7

Comparator P Match Period=
000: 1024 CTMn clocks
001: 128 CTMn clocks
010: 256 CTMn clocks
011: 384 CTMn clocks
100: 512 CTMn clocks
101: 640 CTMn clocks
110: 768 CTMn clocks
111: 896 CTMn clocks

These three bits are used to setup the value on the internal CCRP 3-bit register, which are then compared with the internal counter's highest three bits. The result of this comparison can be selected to clear the internal counter if the CTnCCLR bit is set to zero. Setting the CTnCCLR bit to zero ensures that a compare match with the CCRP values will reset the internal counter. As the CCRP bits are only compared with the highest three counter bits, the compare values exist in 128 clock cycle multiples. Clearing all three bits to zero is in effect allowing the counter to overflow at its maximum value.

• CTMnC1 Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	CTnM1	CTnM0	CTnIO1	CTnIO0	CTnOC	CTnPOL	CTnDPX	CTnCCLR
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 **CTnM1~CTnM0**: CTMn operating mode selection
00: Compare Match Output Mode
01: Undefined
10: PWM Output Mode
11: Timer/Counter Mode

These bits setup the required operating mode for the CTMn. To ensure reliable operation the CTMn should be switched off before any changes are made to the CTnM1 and CTnM0 bits. In the Timer/Counter Mode, the CTMn output pin state is undefined.

Bit 5~4 **CTnIO1~CTnIO0**: CTMn external pin CTPn output function selection

Compare Match Output Mode
00: No change
01: Output low
10: Output high
11: Toggle output

PWM Output Mode
00: PWM Output inactive state
01: PWM Output active state
10: PWM output
11: Undefined

Timer/Counter Mode
Unused

These two bits are used to determine how the CTMn output pin changes state when a certain condition is reached. The function that these bits select depends upon in which mode the CTMn is running.

In the Compare Match Output Mode, the CTnIO1 and CTnIO0 bits determine how the CTMn output pin changes state when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. The CTMn output pin can be setup to switch high, switch low or to toggle its present state when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. When the bits are both zero, then no change will take place on the output. The initial value of the CTMn output

pin should be setup using the CTnOC bit in the CTMnC1 register. Note that the output level requested by the CTnIO1 and CTnIO0 bits must be different from the initial value setup using the CTnOC bit otherwise no change will occur on the CTMn output pin when a compare match occurs. After the CTMn output pin changes state it can be reset to its initial level by changing the level of the CTnON bit from low to high.

In the PWM Output Mode, the CTnIO1 and CTnIO0 bits determine how the CTMn output pin changes state when a certain compare match condition occurs. The PWM output function is modified by changing these two bits. It is necessary to only change the values of the CTnIO1 and CTnIO0 bits only after the CTMn has been switched off. Unpredictable PWM outputs will occur if the CTnIO1 and CTnIO0 bits are changed when The CTMn is running.

Bit 3 **CTnOC**: CTPn output control bit

Compare Match Output Mode
0: Initial low
1: Initial high

PWM Output Mode
0: Active low
1: Active high

This is the output control bit for the CTPn output pin. Its operation depends upon whether CTMn is being used in the Compare Match Output Mode or in the PWM Output Mode. It has no effect if the CTMn is in the Timer/Counter Mode. In the Compare Match Output Mode, it determines the logic level of the CTMn output pin before a compare match occurs. In the PWM Output Mode, it determines if the PWM signal is active high or active low.

Bit 2 **CTnPOL**: CTMn CTPn output polarity control
0: Non-invert
1: Invert

This bit controls the polarity of the CTPn output pin. When the bit is set high the CTMn output pin will be inverted and not inverted when the bit is zero. It has no effect if the CTMn is in the Timer/Counter Mode.

Bit 1 **CTnDPX**: CTMn PWM period/duty control
0: CCRP - period; CCRA - duty
1: CCRP - duty; CCRA - period

This bit determines which of the CCRA and CCRP registers are used for period and duty control of the PWM waveform.

Bit 0 **CTnCCLR**: CTMn counter clear condition selection
0: CTMn Comparatror P match
1: CTMn Comparatror A match

This bit is used to select the method which clears the counter. Remember that the Compact TM contains two comparators, Comparator A and Comparator P, either of which can be selected to clear the internal counter. With the CTnCCLR bit set high, the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. When the bit is low, the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from the Comparator P or with a counter overflow. A counter overflow clearing method can only be implemented if the CCRP bits are all cleared to zero. The CTnCCLR bit is not used in the PWM Output Mode.

• CTMnDL Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: CTMn Counter Low Byte Register bit 7 ~ bit 0
CTMn 10-bit Counter bit 7 ~ bit 0

• **CTMnDH Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	R	R
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	0

Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 1~0 **D9~D8**: CTMn Counter High Byte Register bit 1 ~ bit 0
CTMn 10-bit Counter bit 9 ~ bit 8

• **CTMnAL Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: CTMn CCRA Low Byte Register bit 7 ~ bit 0
CTMn 10-bit CCRA bit 7 ~ bit 0

• **CTMnAH Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	0

Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 1~0 **D9~D8**: CTMn CCRA High Byte Register bit 1 ~ bit 0
CTMn 10-bit CCRA bit 9 ~ bit 8

Compact Type TM Operating Modes

The Compact Type TM can operate in one of three operating modes, Compare Match Output Mode, PWM Output Mode or Timer/Counter Mode. The operating mode is selected using the CTnM1 and CTnM0 bits in the CTMnC1 register.

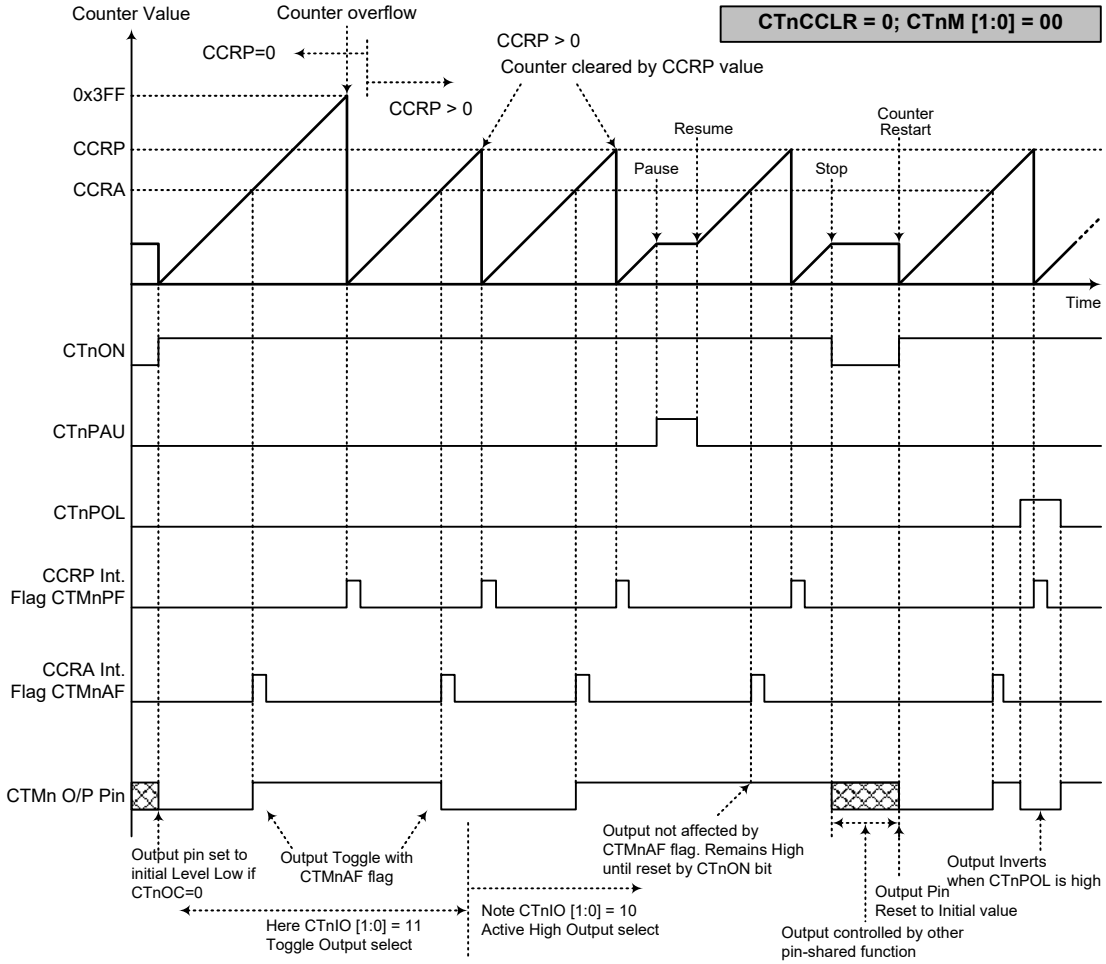
Compare Match Output Mode

To select this mode, bits CTnM1 and CTnM0 in the CTMnC1 register, should be set to 00 respectively. In this mode once the counter is enabled and running it can be cleared by three methods. These are a counter overflow, a compare match from Comparator A and a compare match from Comparator P. When the CTnCCLR bit is low, there are two ways in which the counter can be cleared. One is when a compare match from Comparator P, the other is when the CCRP bits are all zero which allows the counter to overflow. Here both CTMnAF and CTMnPF interrupt request flags for Comparator A and Comparator P respectively, will both be generated.

If the CTnCCLR bit in the CTMnC1 register is high, then the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from Comparator A. However, here only the CTMnAF interrupt request flag will be generated even if the value of the CCRP bits is less than that of the CCRA registers. Therefore, when CTnCCLR is high no CTMnPF interrupt request flag will be generated. If the CCRA bits are all zero, the counter will overflow when it reaches its maximum 10-bit, 3FF Hex, value, however here the CTMnAF interrupt request flag will not be generated.

As the name of the mode suggests, after a comparison is made, the CTMn output pin will change state. The CTMn output pin condition however only changes state when a CTMnAF interrupt request flag is generated after a compare match occurs from Comparator A. The CTMnPF interrupt

request flag, generated from a compare match occurs from Comparator P, will have no effect on the CTMn output pin. The way in which the CTMn output pin changes state are determined by the condition of the CTnIO1 and CTnIO0 bits in the CTMnC1 register. The CTMn output pin can be selected using the CTnIO1 and CTnIO0 bits to go high, to go low or to toggle from its present condition when a compare match occurs from Comparator A. The initial condition of the CTMn output pin, which is setup after the CTnON bit changes from low to high, is setup using the CTnOC bit. Note that if the CTnIO1 and CTnIO0 bits are zero then no pin change will take place.

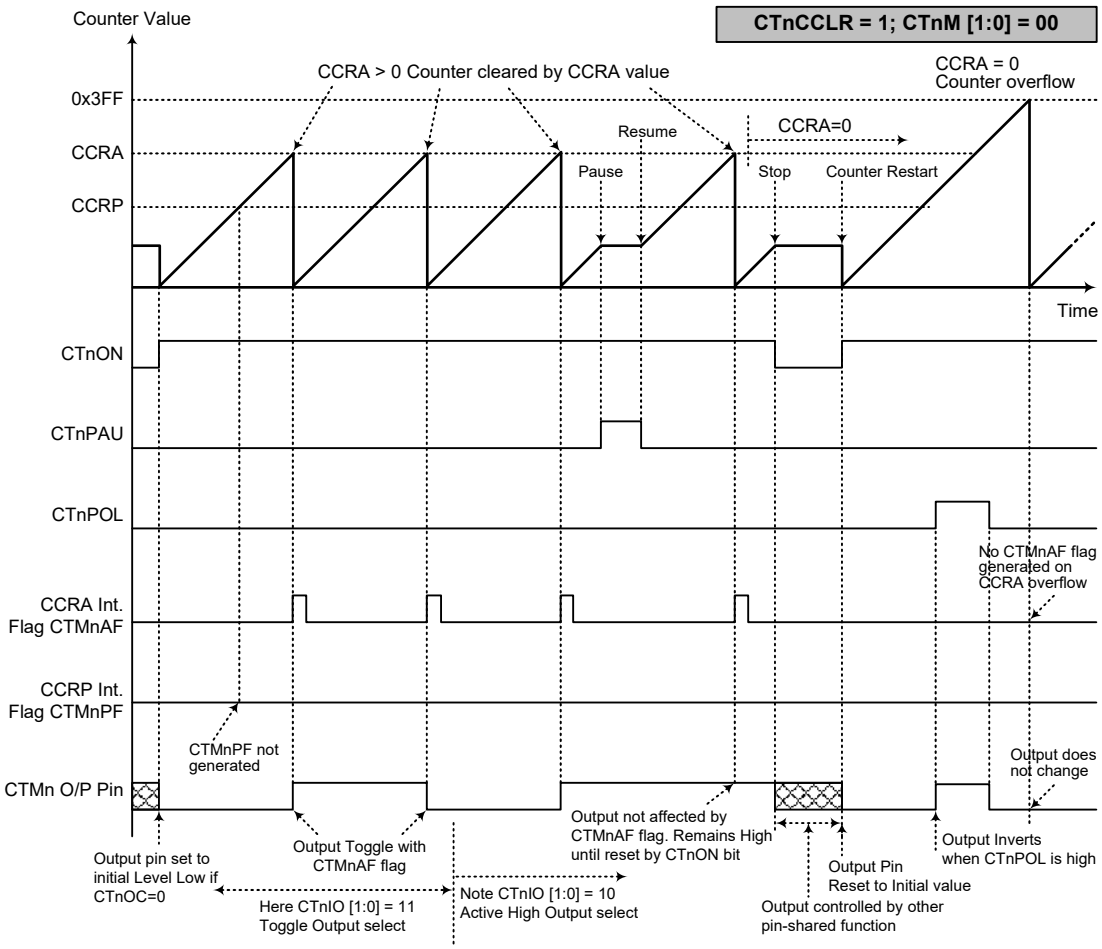


Compare Match Output Mode – CTnCCLR=0 (n=0~1)

Note: 1. With CTnCCLR=0, a Comparator P match will clear the counter

2. The CTMn output pin controlled only by the CTMnAF flag

3. The output pin reset to initial state by a CTnON bit rising edge



Compare Match Output Mode – CTnCCLR=1 (n=0~1)

Note: 1. With CTnCCLR=1, a Comparator A match will clear the counter

2. The CTMn output pin controlled only by the CTMnAF flag

3. The output pin reset to initial state by a CTnON rising edge

4. The CTMnPF flags is not generated when CTnCCLR=1

Timer/Counter Mode

To select this mode, bits CTnM1 and CTnM0 in the CTMnC1 register should be set to 11 respectively. The Timer/Counter Mode operates in an identical way to the Compare Match Output Mode generating the same interrupt flags. The exception is that in the Timer/Counter Mode the CTMn output pin is not used. Therefore, the above description and Timing Diagrams for the Compare Match Output Mode can be used to understand its function. As the CTMn output pin is not used in this mode, the pin can be used as a normal I/O pin or other pin-shared functions.

PWM Output Mode

To select this mode, bits CTnM1 and CTnM0 in the CTMnC1 register should be set to 10 respectively. The PWM function within the CTMn is useful for applications which require functions such as motor control, heating control, illumination control etc. By providing a signal of fixed frequency but of varying duty cycle on the CTMn output pin, a square wave AC waveform can be generated with varying equivalent DC RMS values.

As both the period and duty cycle of the PWM waveform can be controlled, the choice of generated waveform is extremely flexible. In the PWM Output Mode, the CTnCCLR bit has no effect on the PWM operation. Both of the CCRA and CCRP registers are used to generate the PWM waveform, one register is used to clear the internal counter and thus control the PWM waveform frequency, while the other one is used to control the duty cycle. Which register is used to control either frequency or duty cycle is determined using the CTnDPX bit in the CTMnC1 register. The PWM waveform frequency and duty cycle can therefore be controlled by the values in the CCRA and CCRP registers.

An interrupt flag, one for each of the CCRA and CCRP, will be generated when a compare match occurs from either Comparator A or Comparator P. The CTnOC bit in the CTMnC1 register is used to select the required polarity of the PWM waveform while the two CTnIO1 and CTnIO0 bits are used to enable the PWM output or to force the CTMn output pin to a fixed high or low level. The CTnPOL bit is used to reverse the polarity of the PWM output waveform.

• 10-bit CTMn, PWM Output Mode, Edge-aligned Mode, CTnDPX=0

CCRP	1~7	0
Period	CCRP×128	1024
Duty	CCRA	

If f_{SYS}=8MHz, CTMn clock source is $f_{SYS}/4$, CCRP=2, CCRA=128,

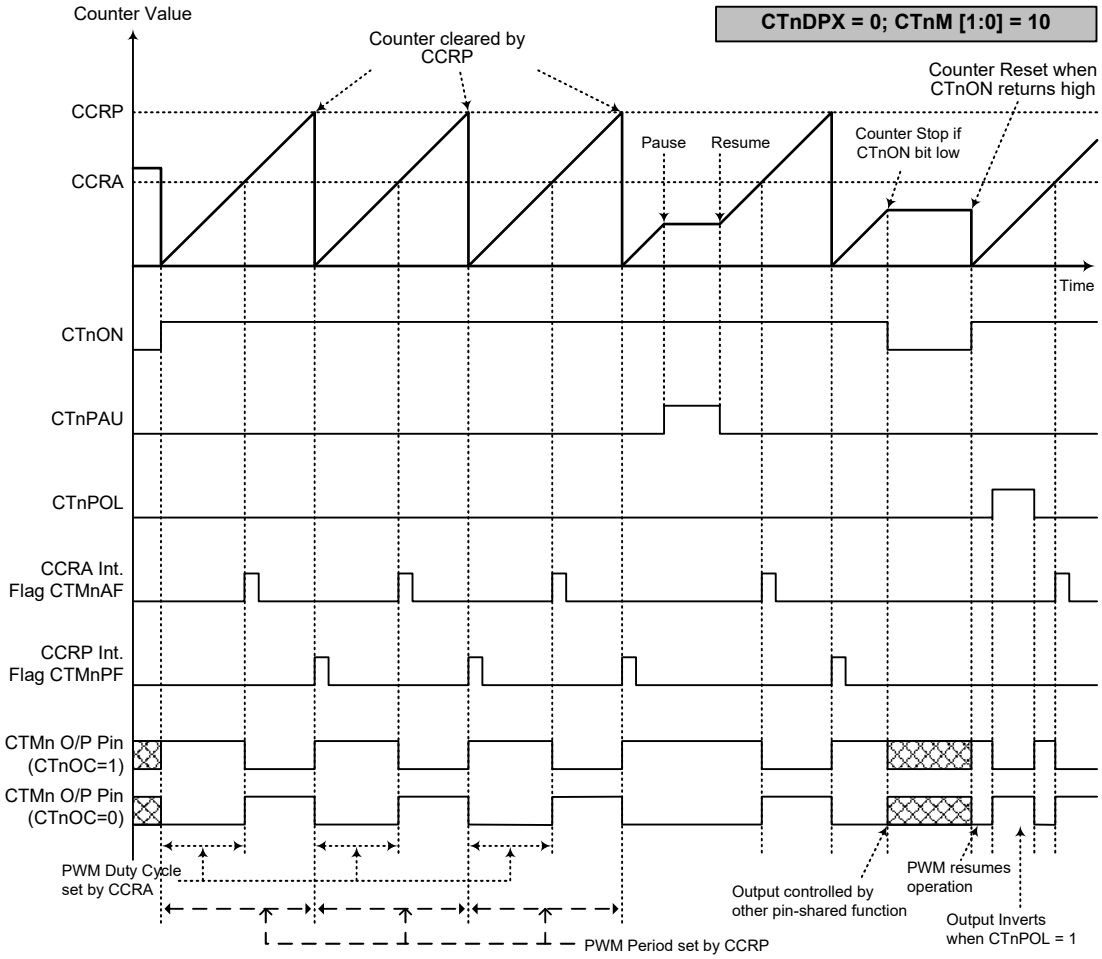
The CTMn PWM output frequency=$(f_{SYS}/4)/(2\times128)=f_{SYS}/1024$=8kHz, duty=128/(2×128)=50%.

If the Duty value defined by the CCRA register is equal to or greater than the Period value, then the PWM output duty is 100%.

• 10-bit CTMn, PWM Output Mode, Edge-aligned Mode, CTnDPX=1

CCRP	1~7	0
Period	CCRA	
Duty	CCRP×128	1024

The PWM output period is determined by the CCRA register value together with the CTMn clock while the PWM duty cycle is defined by the CCRP register value.



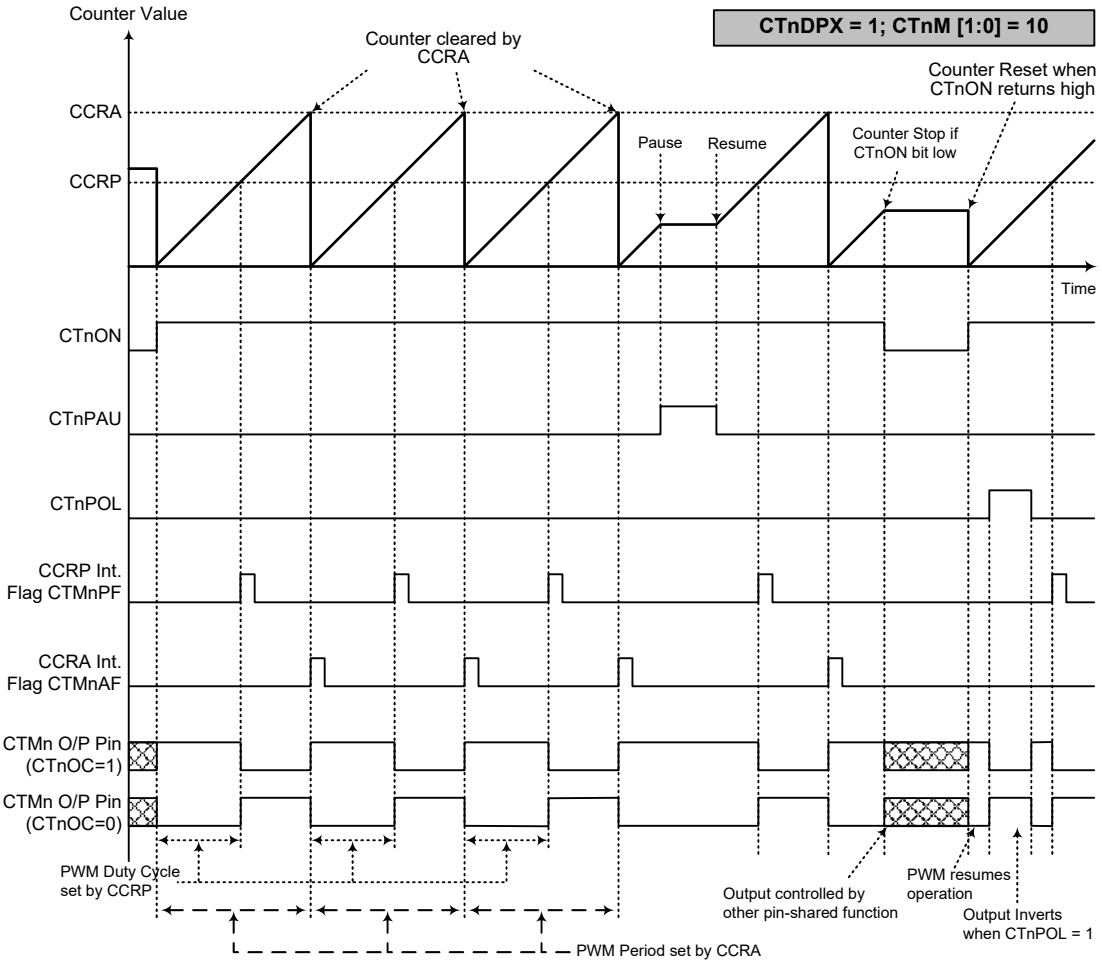
PWM Output Mode – CTnDPX=0 (n=0~1)

Note: 1. Here CTnDPX=0 – Counter cleared by CCRP

2. A counter clear sets PWM Period

3. The internal PWM function continues running even when CTnIO[1:0]=00 or 01

4. The CTnCCLR bit has no influence on PWM operation



PWM Output Mode – CTnDPX=1 (n=0~1)

Note: 1. Here CTnDPX=1 – Counter cleared by CCRA

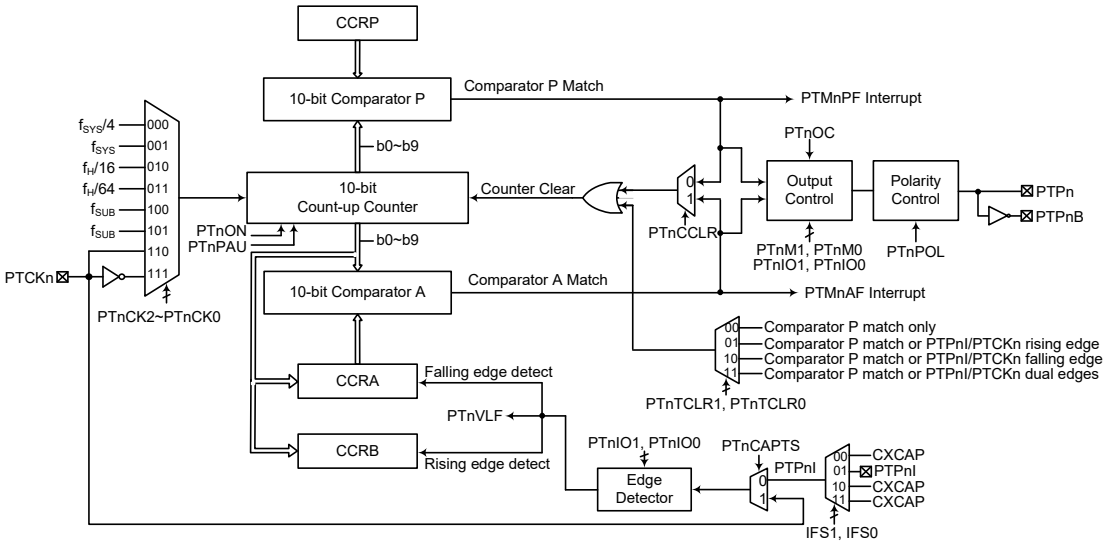
2. A counter clear sets PWM Period

3. The internal PWM function continues even when CTnIO[1:0]=00 or 01

4. The CTnCCLR bit has no influence on PWM operation

Periodic Type TM – PTM

The Periodic Type TMs contain five operating modes, which are Compare Match Output, Timer/ Event Counter, Capture Input, Single Pulse Output and PWM Output modes. The Periodic TMs can be controlled with external input pins and can drive two external output pins.

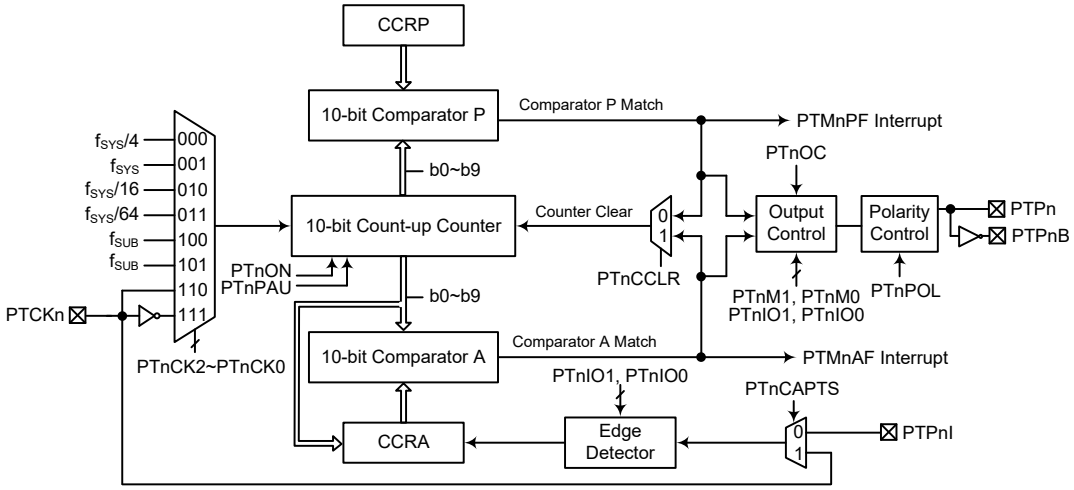


Note: 1. The CXCAP is the Power Line Transceiver comparator output signal.

2. The PTMn PTPnI signal can be from the external PTPnI pin input or from the internal CXCAP signal of the Power Line Transceiver, which is selected using the IFS[3:2] bits.

3. As the PTMn external pins are pin-shared with other functions, the relevant pin-shared control bits should be properly configured before using these pins.

Periodic Type TM Block Diagram (n=0)



Note: As the PTMn external pins are pin-shared with other functions, the relevant pin-shared control bits should be properly configured before using these pins, except the PTP1I pin which is selected only when the PTM1 capture input function is used by configuring the related PTM control register.

Periodic Type TM Block Diagram (n=1)

Periodic TM Operation

The Periodic Type TM core is a 10-bit count-up counter which is driven by a user selectable internal or external clock source. There are also two internal comparators with the names, Comparator A and Comparator P. These comparators will compare the value in the counter with CCRA and CCRP registers. The CCRA and CCRP comparators are 10-bit wide whose value is respectively compared with all counter bits.

The only way of changing the value of the 10-bit counter using the application program, is to clear the counter by changing the PTnON bit from low to high. The counter will also be cleared automatically by a counter overflow or a compare match with one of its associated comparators. When these conditions occur, a PTMn interrupt signal will also usually be generated. The Periodic Type TM can operate in a number of different operational modes and can be driven by different clock sources including two input pins and also control two output pins. All operating setup conditions are selected using relevant internal registers.

Periodic Type TM Register Description

Overall operation of the Periodic Type TM is controlled using a series of registers. A read only register pair exists to store the internal 10-bit counter value, while three read/write register pairs exist to store the internal 10-bit CCRA value, CCRP value and CCRB value. The remaining three registers are control registers which setup the different operating and control modes.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PTMnC0	PTnPAU	PTnCK2	PTnCK1	PTnCK0	PTnON	—	—	—
PTMnC1	PTnM1	PTnM0	PTnIO1	PTnIO0	PTnOC	PTnPOL	PTnCAPTS	PTnCCLR
PTMnC2*	—	—	—	—	—	PTnTCLR1	PTnTCLR0	PTnVLF
PTMnDL	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
PTMnDH	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8
PTMnAL	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
PTMnAH	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8
PTMnBL*	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
PTMnBH*	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8
PTMnRPL	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
PTMnRPH	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8

*: The Registers with * symbol are only available for PTM0 (i.e., n=0).

10-bit Periodic TM Register List (n=0~1)

- **PTMnC0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PTnPAU	PTnCK2	PTnCK1	PTnCK0	PTnON	—	—	—
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	—	—
POR	0	0	0	0	0	—	—	—

Bit 7 **PTnPAU**: PTMn counter pause control
0: Run
1: Pause

The counter can be paused by setting this bit high. Clearing the bit to zero restores normal counter operation. When in a Pause condition the PTMn will remain powered up and continue to consume power. The counter will retain its residual value when this bit changes from low to high and resume counting from this value when the bit changes to a low value again.

Bit 6~4 **PTnCK2~PTnCK0**: PTMn counter clock selection
000: $f_{SYS}/4$
001: f_{SYS}
010: $f_H/16$
011: $f_H/64$
100: f_{SUB}
101: f_{SUB}
110: PTCKn rising edge clock
111: PTCKn falling edge clock

These three bits are used to select the clock source for the PTMn. The external pin clock source can be chosen to be active on the rising or falling edge. The clock source f_{SYS} is the system clock, while f_H and f_{SUB} are other internal clocks, the details of which can be found in the oscillator section.

Bit 3 **PTnON**: PTMn counter on/off control
0: Off
1: On

This bit controls the overall on/off function of the PTMn. Setting the bit high enables the counter to run, clearing the bit disables the PTMn. Clearing this bit to zero will stop the counter from counting and turn off the PTMn which will reduce its power consumption. When the bit changes state from low to high the internal counter value will be reset to zero, however when the bit changes from high to low, the internal counter will retain its residual value until the bit returns high again.

If the PTMn is in the Compare Match Output Mode, PWM output Mode or Single Pulse Output Mode then the PTMn output pin will be reset to its initial condition, as specified by the PTnOC bit, when the PTnON bit changes from low to high.

Bit 2~0 Unimplemented, read as "0"

- **PTMnC1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PTnM1	PTnM0	PTnIO1	PTnIO0	PTnOC	PTnPOL	PTnCAPTS	PTnCCLR
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 **PTnM1~PTnM0**: PTMn operating mode selection
00: Compare Match Output Mode
01: Capture Input Mode
10: PWM Output Mode or Single Pulse Output Mode
11: Timer/Counter Mode

These bits setup the required operating mode for the PTMn. To ensure reliable operation the PTMn should be switched off before any changes are made to the PTnM1 and PTnM0 bits. In the Timer/Counter Mode, the PTMn output pin state is undefined.

Bit 5~4 **PTnIO1~PTnIO0**: PTMn external pin function selection

Compare Match Output Mode
00: No change
01: Output low
10: Output high
11: Toggle output

PWM Output Mode/Single Pulse Output Mode
00: PWM output inactive state
01: PWM output active state
10: PWM output
11: Single pulse output

Capture Input Mode (n=0)

PTnTCLR[1:0]=00B:

00: Input capture at rising edge of PTPnI, CXCAP or PTCKn, and the counter value will be latched into CCRA

01: Input capture at falling edge of PTPnI, CXCAP or PTCKn, and the counter value will be latched into CCRA

10: Input capture at both falling and rising edges of PTPnI, CXCAP or PTCKn, and the counter value will be latched into CCRA

11: Input capture disabled

PTnTCLR[1:0]=01B,10B or 11B:

00: Input capture at rising edge of PTPnI, CXCAP or PTCKn, and the counter value will be latched into CCRB

01: Input capture at falling edge of PTPnI, CXCAP or PTCKn, and the counter value will be latched into CCRA

10: Input capture at both falling and rising edges of PTPnI, CXCAP or PTCKn, and the counter value will be latched into CCRA at falling edge or CCRB at rising edge

11: Input capture disabled

Capture Input Mode (n=1)

00: Input capture at rising edge of PTPnI or PTCKn

01: Input capture at falling edge of PTPnI or PTCKn

10: Input capture at rising/falling edge of PTPnI or PTCKn

11: Input capture disabled

Timer/Counter Mode

Unused

These two bits are used to determine how the PTMn functions when a certain condition is reached. The function that these bits select depends upon in which mode the PTMn is running.

In the Compare Match Output Mode, the PTnIO1 and PTnIO0 bits determine how the PTMn output pin changes state when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. The PTMn output can be setup to switch high, switch low or to toggle its present state when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. When the bits are both zero, then no change will take place on the output. The initial value of the PTMn output should be setup using the PTnOC bit in the PTMnC1 register. Note that the output level requested by the PTnIO1 and PTnIO0 bits must be different from the initial value setup using the PTnOC bit otherwise no change will occur on the PTMn noutput when a compare match occurs. After the PTMn output pin changes state, it can be reset to its initial level by changing the level of the PTnON bit from low to high.

In the PWM Output Mode, the PTnIO1 and PTnIO0 bits determine how the PTMn output changes state when a certain compare match condition occurs. The PWM output function is modified by changing these two bits. It is necessary to only change the values of the PTnIO1 and PTnIO0 bits only after the PTMn has been switched off. Unpredictable PWM outputs will occur if the PTnIO1 and PTnIO0 bits are changed when the PTMn is running.

Bit 3 **PTnOC**: PTMn PTPn output control bit

Compare Match Output Mode

0: Initial low

1: Initial high

PWM Output Mode/Single Pulse Output Mode

0: Active low

1: Active high

This is the output control bit for the PTMn output. Its operation depends upon whether PTMn is being used in the Compare Match Output Mode or in the PWM Output Mode/ Single Pulse Output Mode. It has no effect if the PTMn is in the Timer/Counter Mode. In the Compare Match Output Mode, it determines the logic level of the PTMn output before a compare match occurs. In the PWM Output Mode it determines if the PWM signal is active high or active low. In the Single Pulse Output Mode, it determines the

logic level of the PTMn output when the PTnON bit changes from low to high.

Bit 2 **PTnPOL**: PTMn PTPn output polarity control
0: Non-invert
1: Invert
This bit controls the polarity of the PTPn output. When the bit is set high the PTMn output will be inverted and not inverted when the bit is zero. It has no effect if the PTMn is in the Timer/Counter Mode.

Bit 1 **PTnCAPTS**: PTMn capture trigger source selection
For n=0
0: From the external PTPnI pin or the internal CXCAP signal, selected using the IFS[3:2] bits
1: From the PTCKn pin
For n=1
0: From the PTPnI pin
1: From the PTCKn pin

Bit 0 **PTnCCLR**: PTMn counter clear condition selection
0: PTMn Comparator P match
1: PTMn Comparator A match
This bit is used to select the method which clears the counter. Remember that the Periodic TM contains two comparators, Comparator A and Comparator P, either of which can be selected to clear the internal counter. With the PTnCCLR bit set high, the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. When the bit is low, the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from the Comparator P or with a counter overflow. A counter overflow clearing method can only be implemented if the CCRP bits are all cleared to zero. The PTnCCLR bit is not used in the PWM Output Mode, Single Pulse Output Mode or Capture Input Mode.

- **PTMnC2 Register (n=0 only)**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	PTnTCLR1	PTnTCLR0	PTnVLF
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R
POR	—	—	—	—	—	0	0	0

Bit 7~3 Unimplemented, read as “0”

Bit 2~1 **PTnTCLR1~PTnTCLR0**: PTMn counter clear condition selection (Capture Input Mode only)
00: Comparator P match
01: Comparator P match or PTCKn/PTPnI/CXCAP rising edge
10: Comparator P match or PTCKn/PTPnI/CXCAP falling edge
11: Comparator P match or PTCKn/PTPnI/CXCAP dual edges
Note that these bit selections can be available only when the PTMn operates in the Capture Input Mode.

Bit 0 **PTnVLF**: PTMn counter value latch edge flag
0: Falling edge triggers the counter value latch
1: Rising edge triggers the counter value latch
When the PTnTCLR1~PTnTCLR0 bits are equal to 00B, ignore this flag status.

• **PTMnDL Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: PTMn Counter Low Byte Register bit 7 ~ bit 0
PTMn 10-bit Counter bit 7 ~ bit 0

• **PTMnDH Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	R	R
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	0

Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 1~0 **D9~D8**: PTMn Counter High Byte Register bit 1 ~ bit 0
PTMn 10-bit Counter bit 9 ~ bit 8

• **PTMnAL Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: PTMn CCRA Low Byte Register bit 7 ~ bit 0
PTMn 10-bit CCRA bit 7 ~ bit 0

• **PTMnAH Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	0

Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 1~0 **D9~D8**: PTMn CCRA High Byte Register bit 1 ~ bit 0
PTMn 10-bit CCRA bit 9 ~ bit 8

• **PTMnBL Register (n=0 only)**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: PTMn CCRB Low Byte Register bit 7 ~ bit 0
PTMn 10-bit CCRB bit 7 ~ bit 0

• **PTMnBH Register (n=0 only)**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	0

Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 1~0 **D9~D8**: PTMn CCRB High Byte Register bit 1 ~ bit 0
PTMn 10-bit CCRB bit 9 ~ bit 8

• **PTMnRPL Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: PTMn CCRP Low Byte Register bit 7 ~ bit 0
PTMn 10-bit CCRP bit 7 ~ bit 0

• **PTMnRPH Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	0

Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 1~0 **D9~D8**: PTMn CCRP High Byte Register bit 1 ~ bit 0
PTMn 10-bit CCRP bit 9 ~ bit 8

Periodic Type TM Operating Modes

The Periodic Type TM can operate in one of five operating modes, Compare Match Output Mode, PWM Output Mode, Single Pulse Output Mode, Capture Input Mode or Timer/Counter Mode. The operating mode is selected using the PTnM1 and PTnM0 bits in the PTMnC1 register.

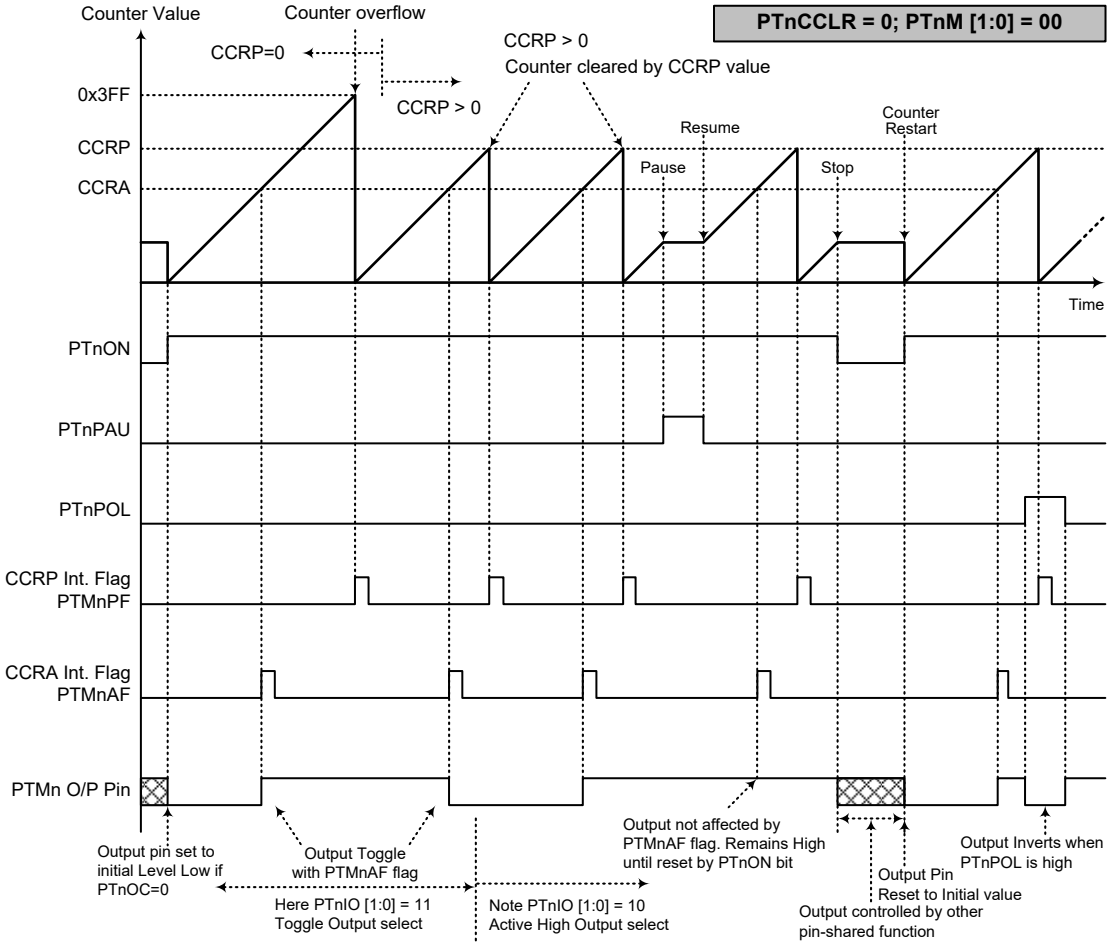
Compare Match Output Mode

To select this mode, bits PTnM1 and PTnM0 in the PTMnC1 register, should be set to 00 respectively. In this mode once the counter is enabled and running it can be cleared by three methods. These are a counter overflow, a compare match from Comparator A and a compare match from Comparator P. When the PTnCCLR bit is low, there are two ways in which the counter can be cleared. One is when a compare match from Comparator P, the other is when the CCRP bits are all zero which allows the counter to overflow. Here both PTMnAF and PTMnPF interrupt request flags for Comparator A and Comparator P respectively, will both be generated.

If the PTnCCLR bit in the PTMnC1 register is high then the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from Comparator A. However, here only the PTMnAF interrupt request flag will be generated even if the value of the CCRP bits is less than that of the CCRA registers. Therefore when PTnCCLR is high no PTMnPF interrupt request flag will be generated. In the Compare Match Output Mode, the CCRA can not be cleared to zero.

If the CCRA bits are all zero, the counter will overflow when its reaches its maximum 3FF Hex value, however here the PTMnAF interrupt request flag will not be generated.

As the name of the mode suggests, after a comparison is made, the PTMn output will change state. The PTMn output condition however only changes state when a PTMnAF interrupt request flag is generated after a compare match occurs from Comparator A. The PTMnPF interrupt request flag, generated from a compare match occurs from Comparator P, will have no effect on the PTMn output. The way in which the PTMn output changes state are determined by the condition of the PTnIO1 and PTnIO0 bits in the PTMnC1 register. The PTMn output can be selected using the PTnIO1 and PTnIO0 bits to go high, to go low or to toggle from its present condition when a compare match occurs from Comparator A. The initial condition of the PTMn output, which is setup after the PTnON bit changes from low to high, is setup using the PTnOC bit. Note that if the PTnIO1 and PTnIO0 bits are zero then no output change will take place.

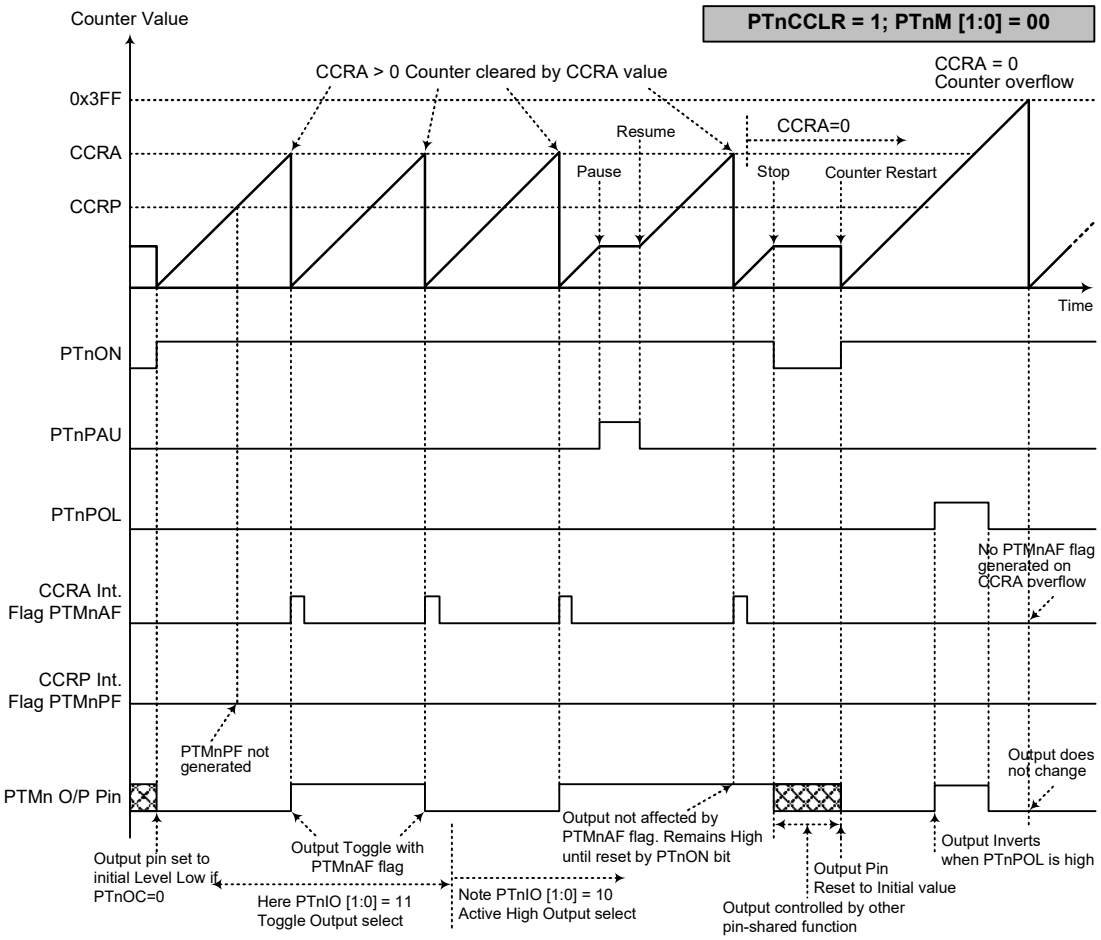


Compare Match Output Mode – PTnCCLR=0 (n=0~1)

Note: 1. With PTnCCLR=0 a Comparator P match will clear the counter

2. The PTMn output is controlled only by the PTMnAF flag

3. The output is reset to its initial state by a PTnON bit rising edge



Compare Match Output Mode – PTnCCLR=1 (n=0~1)

Note: 1. With PTnCCLR=1 a Comparator A match will clear the counter

2. The PTMn output is controlled only by the PTMnAF flag

3. The output is reset to its initial state by a PTnON bit rising edge

4. A PTMnPF flag is not generated when PTnCCLR=1

Timer/Counter Mode

To select this mode, bits PTnM1 and PTnM0 in the PTMnC1 register should be set to 11 respectively. The Timer/Counter Mode operates in an identical way to the Compare Match Output Mode generating the same interrupt flags. The exception is that in the Timer/Counter Mode the PTMn output pins are not used. Therefore, the above description and Timing Diagrams for the Compare Match Output Mode can be used to understand its function. As the PTMn output pins are not used in this mode, the pins can be used as normal I/O pins or other pin-shared functions.

PWM Output Mode

To select this mode, bits PTnM1 and PTnM0 in the PTMnC1 register should be set to 10 respectively. The PWM function within the PTMn is useful for applications which require functions such as motor control, heating control, illumination control etc. By providing a signal of fixed frequency but of varying duty cycle on the PTMn output pin, a square wave AC waveform can be generated with varying equivalent DC RMS values.

As both the period and duty cycle of the PWM waveform can be controlled, the choice of generated waveform is extremely flexible. In the PWM Output Mode, the PTnCCLR bit has no effect on the PWM operation. Both of the CCRA and CCRP registers are used to generate the PWM waveform, one register is used to clear the internal counter and thus control the PWM waveform frequency, while the other one is used to control the duty cycle. The PWM waveform frequency and duty cycle can therefore be controlled by the values in the CCRA and CCRP registers.

An interrupt flag, one for each of the CCRA and CCRP, will be generated when a compare match occurs from either Comparator A or Comparator P. The PTnOC bit in the PTMnC1 register is used to select the required polarity of the PWM waveform while the two PTnIO1 and PTnIO0 bits are used to enable the PWM output or to force the PTMn output to a fixed high or low level. The PTnPOL bit is used to reverse the polarity of the PWM output waveform.

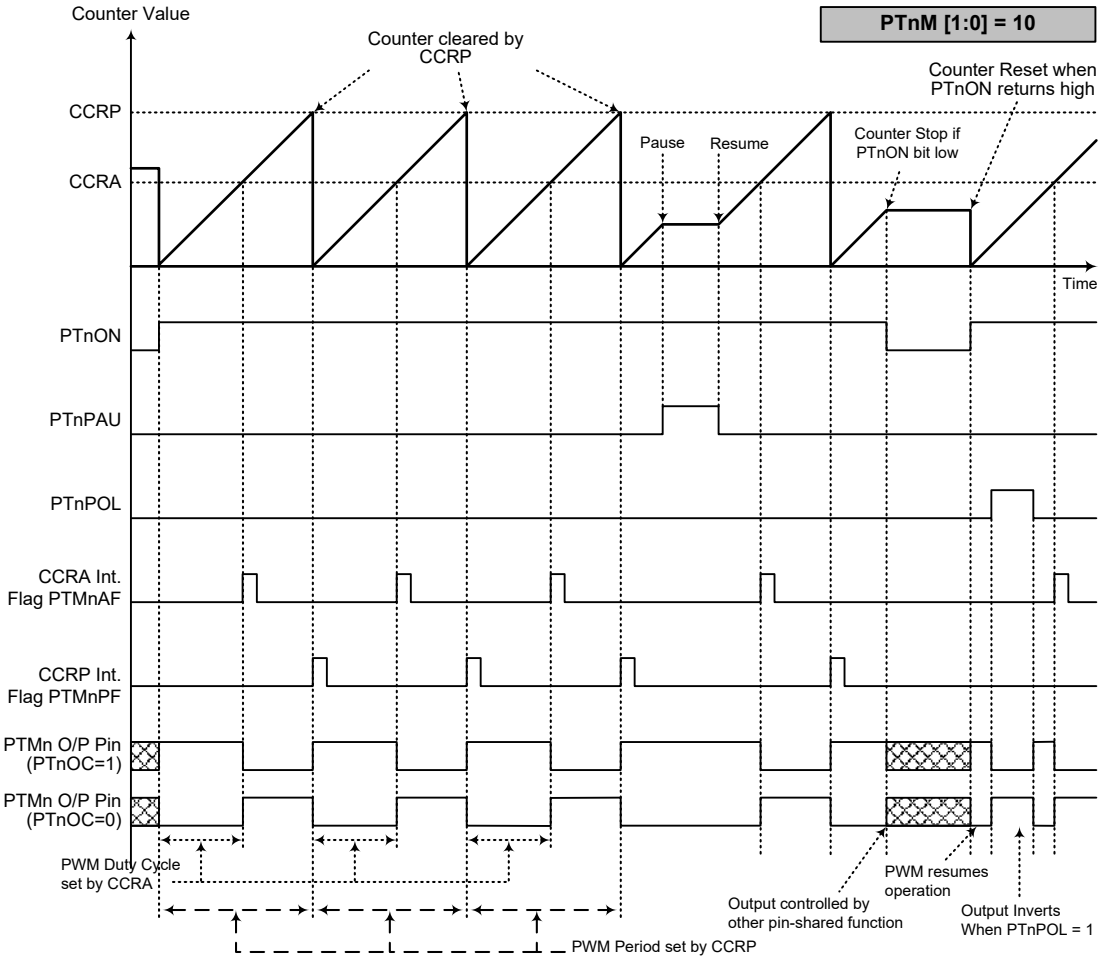
- **10-bit PTMn, PWM Output Mode, Edge-aligned Mode**

CCRP	1~1023	0
Period	1~1023	1024
Duty	CCRA	

If f_{SYS}=8MHz, PTMn clock source select f_{SYS}/4, CCRP=512 and CCRA=128,

The PTMn PWM output frequency=(f_{SYS}/4)/512=f_{SYS}/2048=4kHz, duty=128/512=25%.

If the Duty value defined by the CCRA register is equal to or greater than the Period value, then the PWM output duty is 100%.



PWM Output Mode (n=0~1)

Note: 1. Counter cleared by CCRP

2. A counter clear sets the PWM Period

3. The internal PWM function continues running even when PTnIO[1:0]=00 or 01

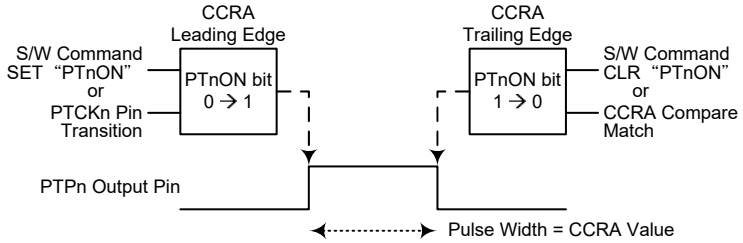
4. The PTnCCLR bit has no influence on PWM operation

Single Pulse Output Mode

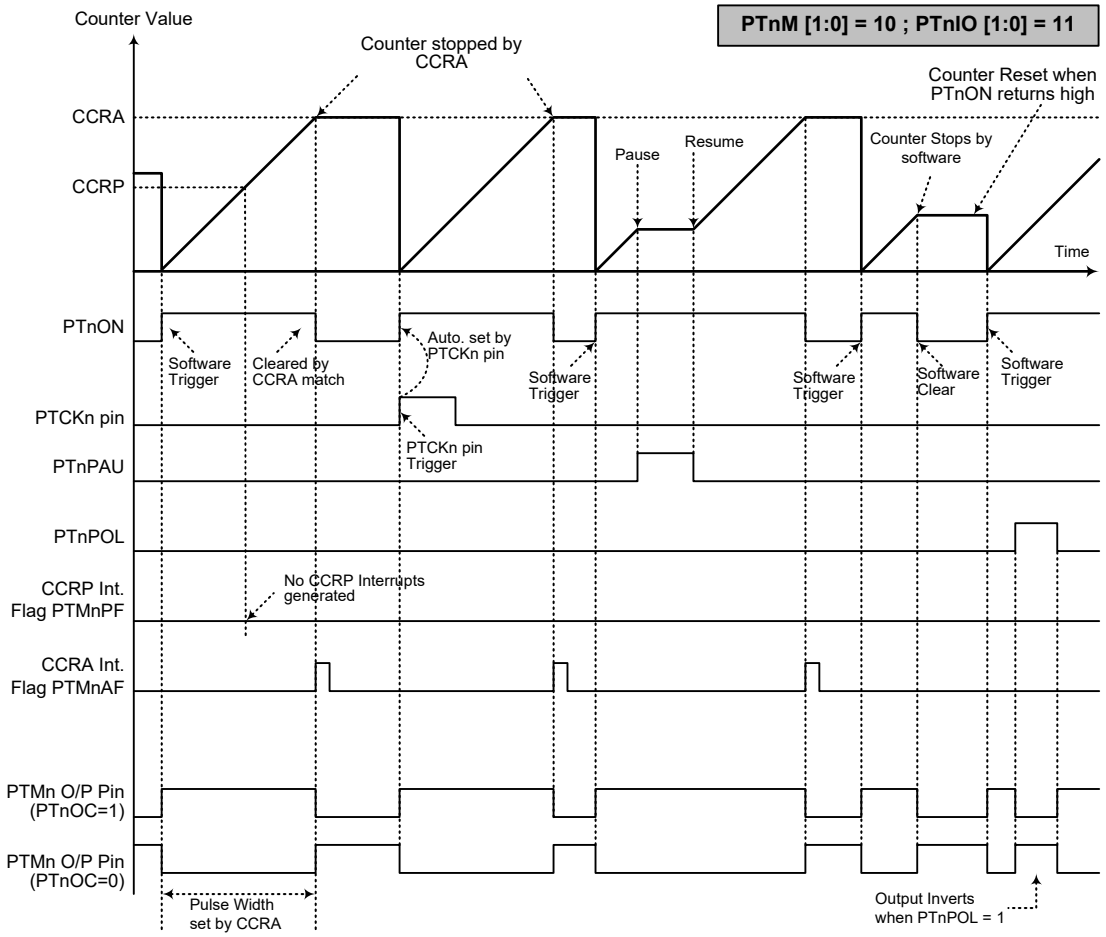
To select this mode, bits PTnM1 and PTnM0 in the PTMnC1 register should be set to 10 respectively and also the PTnIO1 and PTnIO0 bits should be set to 11 respectively. The Single Pulse Output Mode, as the name suggests, will generate a single shot pulse on the PTMn output pin.

The trigger for the pulse output leading edge is a low to high transition of the PTnON bit, which can be implemented using the application program. However, in the Single Pulse Mode, the PTnON bit can also be made to automatically change from low to high using the external PTCKn pin, which will in turn initiate the Single Pulse output. When the PTnON bit transitions to a high level, the counter will start running and the pulse leading edge will be generated. The PTnON bit should remain high when the pulse is in its active state. The generated pulse trailing edge will be generated when the PTnON bit is cleared to zero, which can be implemented using the application program or when a compare match occurs from Comparator A.

However, a compare match from Comparator A will also automatically clear the PTnON bit and thus generate the Single Pulse output trailing edge. In this way the CCRA value can be used to control the pulse width. A compare match from Comparator A will also generate a PTMn interrupt. The counter can only be reset back to zero when the PTnON bit changes from low to high when the counter restarts. In the Single Pulse Output Mode CCRP is not used. The PTnCCLR bit is not used in this Mode.



Single Pulse Generation (n=0~1)



Single Pulse Output Mode (n=0~1)

Note: 1. Counter stopped by CCRA

2. CCRP is not used

3. The pulse is triggered by the PTCKn pin or by setting the PTnON bit high

4. A PTCKn pin active edge will automatically set the PTnON bit high

5. In the Single Pulse Mode, PTnIO[1:0] must be set to “11” and cannot be changed

Capture Input Mode – n=0 for PTM0

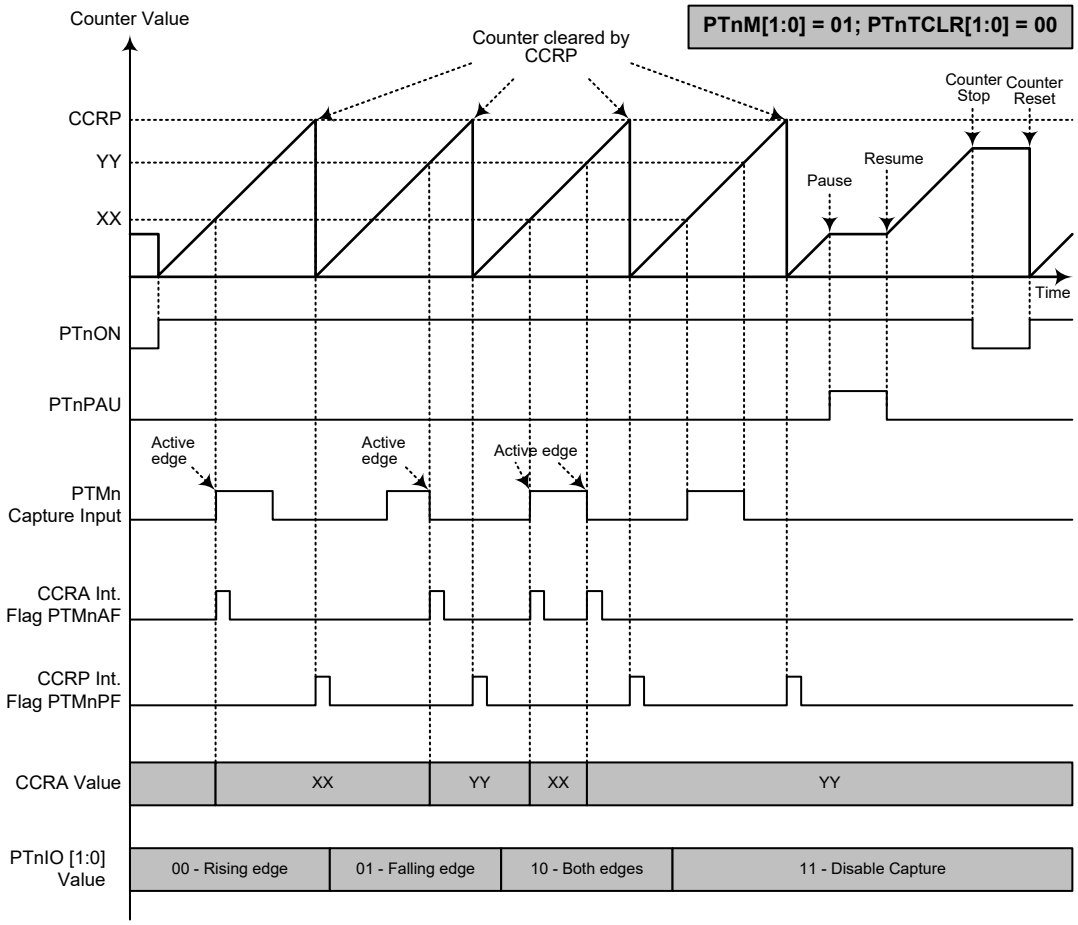
To select this mode, bits PTnM1 and PTnM0 in the PTMnC1 register should be set to 01 respectively. This mode enables external or internal signals to capture and store the present value of the internal counter and can therefore be used for applications such as pulse width measurements. The capture input signal is supplied on the PTCKn or PTPnI pin or from the internal CXCAP signal, which is selected using the PTnCAPTS bit in the PTMnC1 register together with the IFS[3:2] bits in the IFS register. The input pin active edge can be either a rising edge, a falling edge or both rising and falling edges; the active edge transition type is selected using the PTnIO1 and PTnIO0 bits in the PTMnC1 register. The counter is started when the PTnON bit changes from low to high which is initiated using the application program.

The PTnIO1 and PTnIO0 bits decide which active edge transition type to latch counter value and generate an interrupt. The PTnTCLR1 and PTnTCLR0 bits decide the condition that the counter reset back to zero. The present counter value being latched into CCRA or CCRB is decided by both PTnIO1~PTnIO0 and PTnTCLR1~PTnTCLR0 settings. The PTnIO1~PTnIO0 and PTnTCLR1~PTnTCLR0 settings are independent and uninfluenced on each other.

When the required edge transition appears on the PTCKn or PTPnI pin or CXCAP signal, the present value in the counter will be latched into the CCRA registers or CCRB registers and a PTMn interrupt will be generated. Irrespective of what events occur on the PTCKn or PTPnI pin or CXCAP signal, the counter will continue to free run until the PTnON bit changes from high to low. When a CCRP compare match occurs the counter will reset back to zero; in this way the CCRP value can be used to control the maximum counter value. When a CCRP compare match occurs from Comparator P, a PTMn interrupt will also be generated. Counting the number of overflow interrupt signals from the CCRP can be a useful method in measuring long pulse widths. The PTnIO1 and PTnIO0 bits can select the active trigger edge on the PTCKn or PTPnI pin or CXCAP signal to be a rising edge, falling edge or both edge types. If the PTnIO1 and PTnIO0 bits are both set high, then no capture operation will take place irrespective of what happens on the PTCKn or PTPnI pin or CXCAP signal, however it must be noted that the counter will continue to run.

If the capture pulse width is less than two timer clock cycles, it may be ignored by hardware. The timer clock source must be equal to or less than 50MHz, otherwise the counter may fail to count.

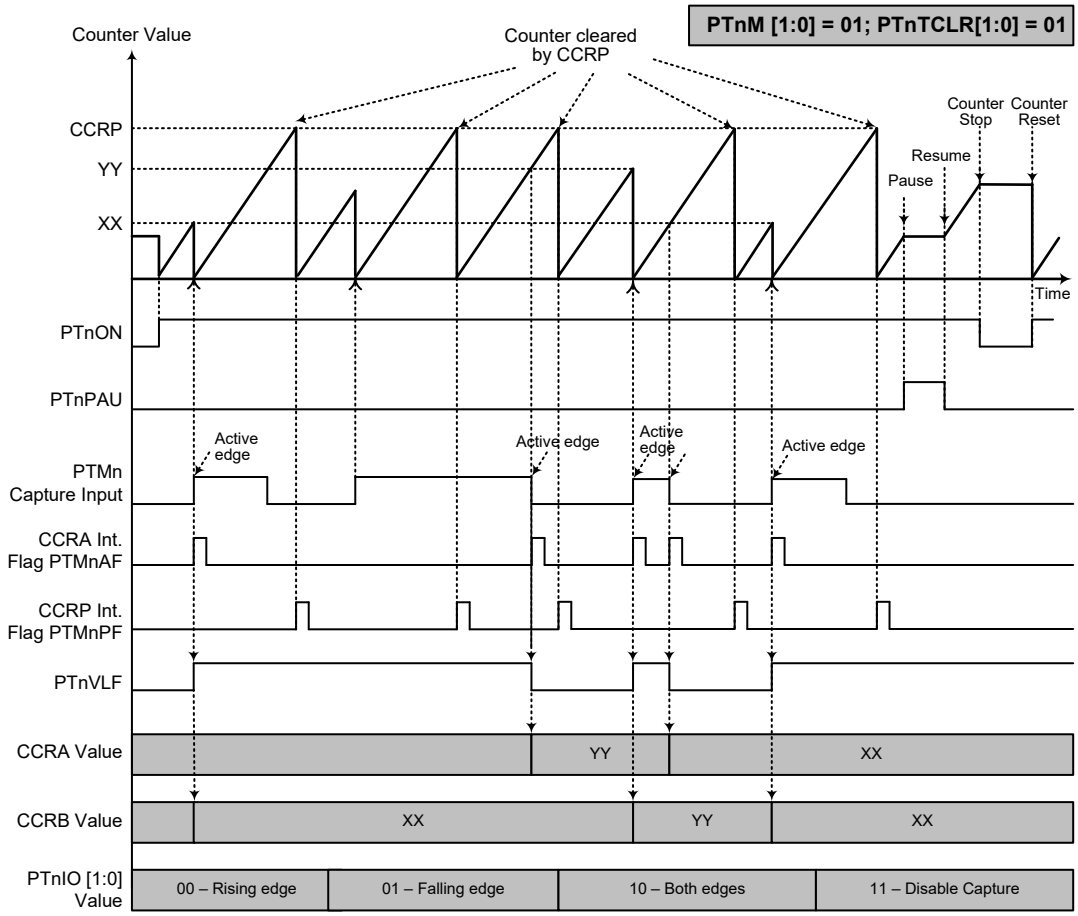
The PTnCCLR, PTnOC and PTnPOL bits are not used in this mode.



Capture Input Mode – PTnTCLR[1:0]=00 (n=0)

Note: 1. PTnM[1:0]=01, PTnTCLR[1:0]=00 and active edge set by the PTnIO[1:0] bits

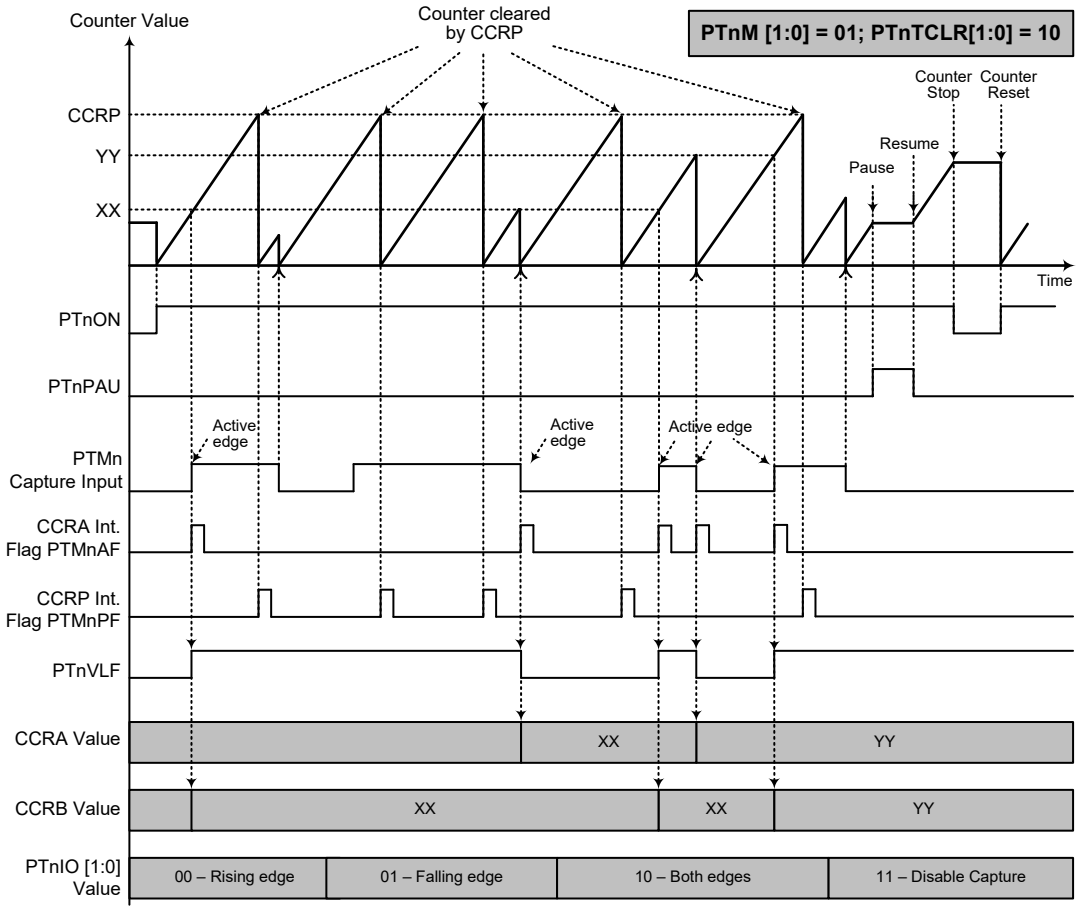
2. A PTMn capture input (PTCKn or PTPnI pin or CXCAP signal) active edge transfers the counter value to CCRA
3. Comparator P match will clear the counter
4. PTnCCLR bit is not used
5. No output function – PTnOC and PTnPOL bits are not used
6. CCRP determines the counter value and the counter has a maximum count value when CCRP is equal to zero
7. Ignore the PTnVLF bit status when PTnTCLR[1:0]=00



Capture Input Mode – PTnTCLR[1:0]=01 (n=0)

Note: 1. PTnM[1:0]=01, PTnTCLR[1:0]=01 and active edge set by the PTIO[1:0] bits

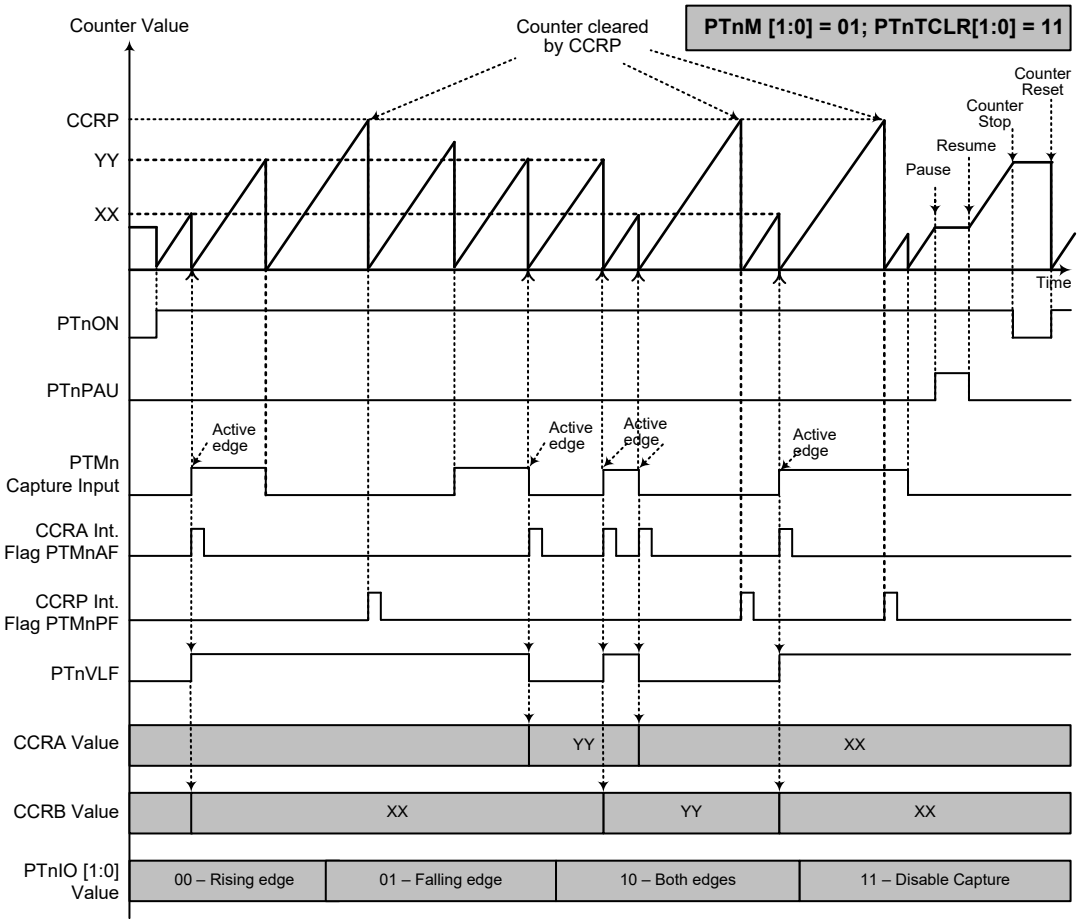
2. A PTMn capture input (PTCKn or PTPnI pin or CXCAP signal) active edge transfers the counter value to CCRA or CCRB
3. Comparator P match or PTMn capture input rising edge will clear the counter
4. PTnCCLR bit is not used
5. No output function – PTnOC and PTnPOL bits are not used
6. CCRP determines the counter value and the counter has a maximum count value when CCRP is equal to zero.



Capture Input Mode – PTnTCLR[1:0]=10 (n=0)

Note: 1. PTnM[1:0]=01, PTnTCLR[1:0]=10 and active edge set by the PTnIO[1:0] bits

2. A PTMn capture input (PTCKn or PTPnI pin or CXCAP signal) active edge transfers the counter value to CCRA or CCRB
3. Comparator P match or PTMn capture input falling edge will clear the counter
4. PTnCCLR bit is not used
5. No output function – PTnOC and PTnPOL bits are not used
6. CCRP determines the counter value and the counter has a maximum count value when CCRP is equal to zero.



Capture Input Mode – PTnTCLR[1:0]=11 (n=0)

Note: 1. PTnM[1:0]=01, PTnTCLR[1:0]=11 and active edge set by the PTnIO[1:0] bits

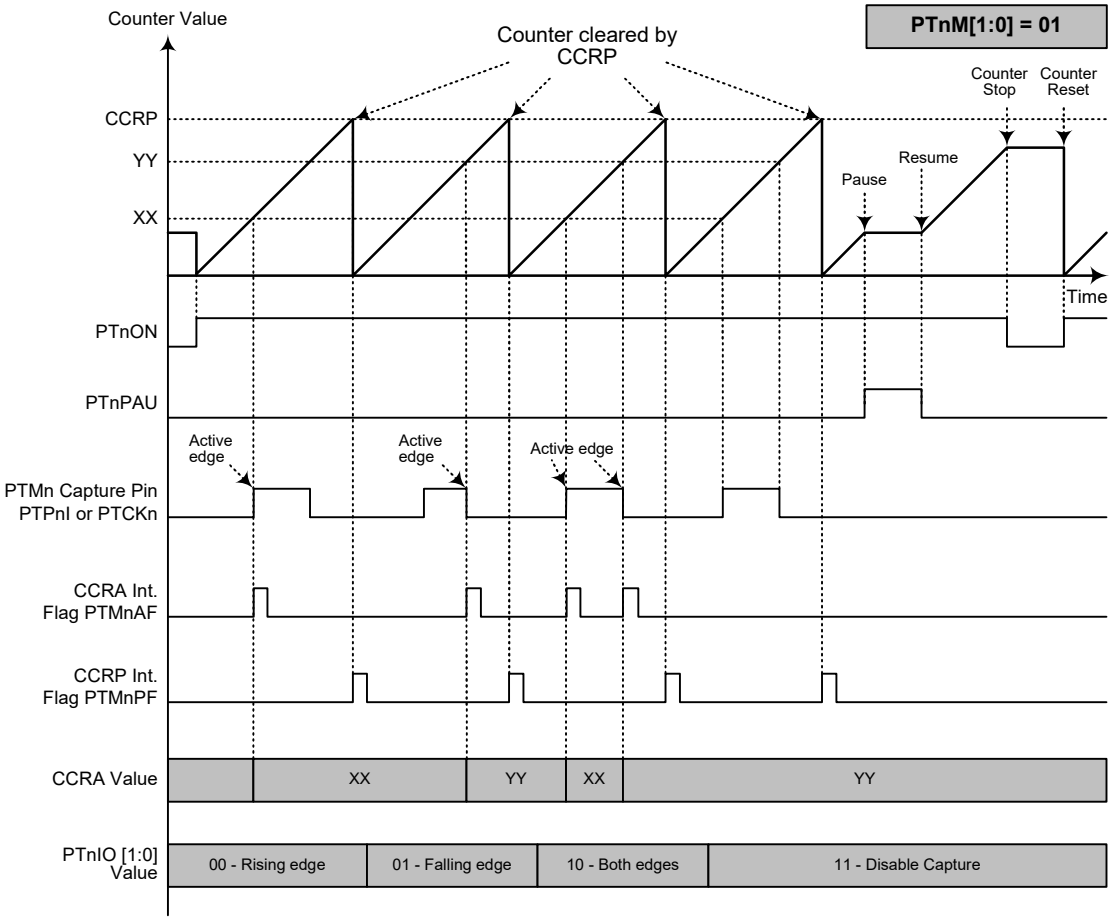
2. A PTMn capture input (PTCKn or PTPnI pin or CXCAP signal) active edge transfers the counter value to CCRA or CCRB
3. Comparator P match or PTMn capture input rising or falling edge will clear the counter
4. PTnCCLR bit is not used
5. No output function – PTnOC and PTnPOL bits are not used
6. CCRP determines the counter value and the counter has a maximum count value when CCRP is equal to zero.

Capture Input Mode (n=1 for PTM1)

To select this mode, bits PTnM1 and PTnM0 in the PTMnC1 register should be set to 01 respectively. This mode enables external signals to capture and store the present value of the internal counter and can therefore be used for applications such as pulse width measurements. The external signal is supplied on the PTPnI or PTCKn pin which is selected using the PTnCAPTS bit in the PTMnC1 register. The input pin active edge can be either a rising edge, a falling edge or both rising and falling edges; the active edge transition type is selected using the PTnIO1 and PTnIO0 bits in the PTMnC1 register. The counter is started when the PTnON bit changes from low to high which is initiated using the application program.

When the required edge transition appears on the PTCKn or PTPnI pin the present value in the counter will be latched into the CCRA registers and a PTMn interrupt generated. Irrespective of what events occur on the PTCKn or PTPnI pin, the counter will continue to free run until the PTnON bit changes from high to low. When a CCRP compare match occurs the counter will reset back to zero; in this way the CCRP value can be used to control the maximum counter value. When a CCRP compare match occurs from Comparator P, a PTM interrupt will also be generated. Counting the number of overflow interrupt signals from the CCRP can be a useful method in measuring long pulse widths. The PTnIO1 and PTnIO0 bits can select the active trigger edge on the PTCKn or PTPnI pin to be a rising edge, falling edge or both edge types. If the PTnIO1 and PTnIO0 bits are both set high, then no capture operation will take place irrespective of what happens on the PTCKn or PTPnI pin, however it must be noted that the counter will continue to run.

The PTnCCLR, PTnOC and PTnPOL bits are not used in this Mode.



Capture Input Mode (n=1)

Note: 1. PTnM[1:0]=01 and active edge set by the PTIO[1:0] bits

2. A PTMn Capture input pin active edge transfers the counter value to CCRA

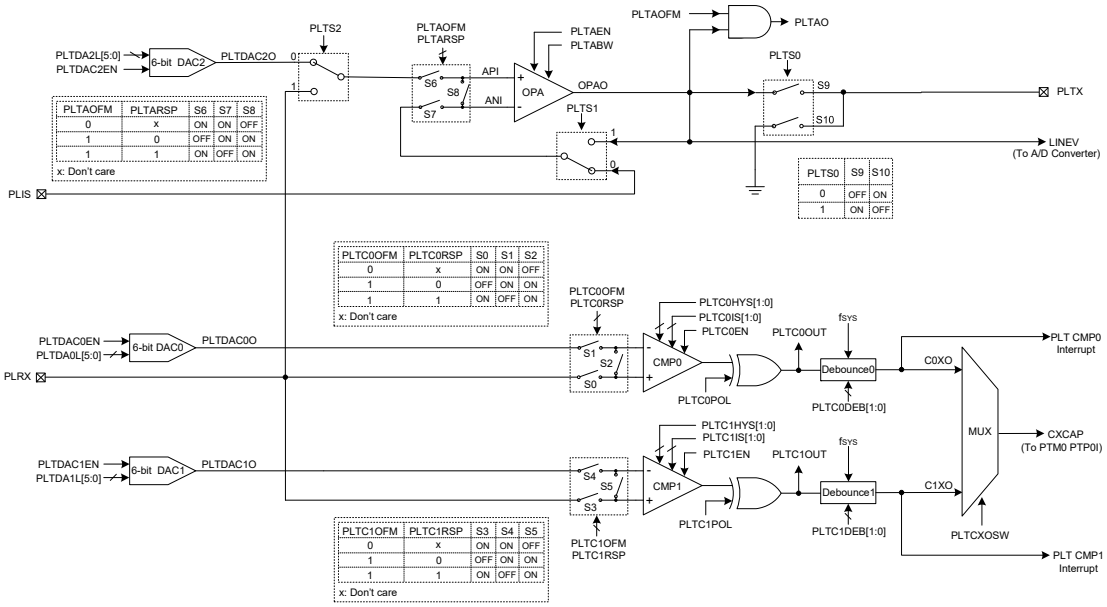
3. PTnCCLR bit is not used

4. No output function – PTnOC and PTnPOL bits are not used

5. CCRP determines the counter value and the counter has a maximum count value when CCRP is equal to zero.

Power Line Transceiver – PLT

The device provides a power line transceiver circuit which can be used for power line data transmission and reception. The circuit consists of three 6-bit D/A Converters, one fully integrated Operational Amplifier and two Comparators.



Power Line Transceiver Block Diagram

Power Line Transceiver Registers

Overall operation of the Power Line Transceiver circuit is controlled using a series of registers. The DACn outputs, the Operational Amplifier, Comparator input signal selection, operating modes, output signals all can be setup using these registers by application program.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PLTSW	—	—	—	—	—	PLTS2	PLTS1	PLTS0
PLTDACC	—	—	—	—	—	PLTDAC2EN	PLTDAC1EN	PLTDAC0EN
PLTDA0L	—	—	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
PLTDA1L	—	—	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
PLTDA2L	—	—	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
PLTC0C	PLTC0OUT	PLTC0EN	PLTC0O	—	PLTC0DEB1	PLTC0DEB0	PLTC0IS1	PLTC0IS0
PLTC1C	PLTC1OUT	PLTC1EN	PLTC1O	—	PLTC1DEB1	PLTC1DEB0	PLTC1IS1	PLTC1IS0
PLTC0VOS	—	PLTC0OFM	PLTC0RSP	PLTC0OF4	PLTC0OF3	PLTC0OF2	PLTC0OF1	PLTC0OF0
PLTC1VOS	—	PLTC1OFM	PLTC1RSP	PLTC1OF4	PLTC1OF3	PLTC1OF2	PLTC1OF1	PLTC1OF0
PLTCHYC	—	PLTCXOSW	PLTC1POL	PLTC0POL	PLTC1HYS1	PLTC1HYS0	PLTC0HYS1	PLTC0HYS0
PLTAC	—	PLTAEN	PLTAO	—	—	—	—	PLTABW
PLTAVOS	PLTAOFM	PLTARSP	PLTAOF5	PLTAOF4	PLTAOF3	PLTAOF2	PLTAOF1	PLTAOF0

Power Line Transceiver Register List

• **PLTSW Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	PLTS2	PLTS1	PLTS0
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	—	0	0	0

Bit 7~3 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 2 **PLTS2**: PLTS2 switch selection
0: Connect to PLTDAC2O
1: Connect to PLRX

Bit 1 **PLTS1**: PLTS1 switch selection
0: Connect to PLIS
1: Connect to LINEV

Bit 0 **PLTS0**: PLTX switch selection
0: PLTX switch to GND
1: PLTX switch to OPAO

• **PLTDACC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	PLTDAC2EN	PLTDAC1EN	PLTDAC0EN
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	—	0	0	0

Bit 7~3 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 2 **PLTDAC2EN**: PLT DAC2 enable or disable control
0: Disable (PLTDAC2O high impedance)
1: Enable

Bit 1 **PLTDAC1EN**: PLT DAC1 enable or disable control
0: Disable (PLTDAC1O high impedance)
1: Enable

Bit 0 **PLTDAC0EN**: PLT DAC0 enable or disable control
0: Disable (PLTDAC0O high impedance)
1: Enable

• **PLTDA0L Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 5~0 **D5~D0**: PLT DAC0 output control code
PLTDAC0O=(DAC $AV_{DD}/2^6$)×PLTDA0L[5:0]

• **PLTDA1L Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 5~0 **D5~D0**: PLT DAC1 output control code
PLTDAC1O=(DAC $AV_{DD}/2^6$)×PLTDA1L[5:0]

• **PLTDA2L Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 5~0 **D5~D0**: PLT DAC2 output control code
PLTDAC2O=(DAC $AV_{DD}/2^6$)×PLTDA2L[5:0]

• **PLTC0C Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PLTC0OUT	PLTC0EN	PLTC0O	—	PLTC0DEB1	PLTC0DEB0	PLTC0IS1	PLTC0IS0
R/W	R	R/W	R	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	—	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 **PLTC0OUT**: PLT Comparator 0 output bit
If PLTC0POL=0 and input voltages of the comparator are
C0PI > C0NI → PLTC0OUT=1
C0NI > C0PI → PLTC0OUT=0
If PLTC0POL=1 and input voltages of the comparator are
C0PI < C0NI → PLTC0OUT=1
C0NI < C0PI → PLTC0OUT=0

Bit 6 **PLTC0EN**: PLT Comparator 0 enable or disable control
0: Comparator disable
1: Comparator enable
This is the PLT Comparator 0 on/off control bit. If the comparator is disabled, the comparator output will be cleared to 0. Therefore, PLTC0OUT=0 when PLTC0POL=0, or PLTC0OUT=1 when PLTC0POL=1.

Bit 5 **PLTC0O**: PLT Comparator 0 debounced output
The PLTC0O is the de-bounce version of PLTC0OUT.
If PLTC0POL=0, the PLTC0O outputs "1" only when the current and previous N samples of PLTC0OUT are "1". If PLTC0POL=1, The PLTC0O outputs "0" only when the current and previous N samples of PLTC0OUT are "0". N depends on PLTC0DEB [1:0] configuration bits.

Bit 4 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 3~2 **PLTC0DEB1~PLTC0DEB0**: PLT Comparator 0 debounce time control
00: No debounce
01: (31~32)×t_{SYS}
10: (63~64)×t_{SYS}
11: (126~127)×t_{SYS}
Note: $t_{SYS}=1/f_{SYS}$

Bit 1~0 **PLTC0IS1~PLTC0IS0**: PLT Comparator 0 current control
Refer to the "Comparator Electrical Characteristics" table for details.

• **PLTC1C Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PLTC1OUT	PLTC1EN	PLTC1O	—	PLTC1DEB1	PLTC1DEB0	PLTC1IS1	PLTC1IS0
R/W	R	R/W	R	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	—	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 **PLTC1OUT**: PLT Comparator 1 output bit
If PLTC1POL=0 and input voltages of the comparator are
C1PI > C1NI → PLTC1OUT=1
C1NI > C1PI → PLTC1OUT=0
If PLTC1POL=1 and input voltages of the comparator are
C1PI < C1NI → PLTC1OUT=1
C1NI < C1PI → PLTC1OUT=0

Bit 6 **PLTC1EN**: PLT Comparator 1 enable or disable control
0: Comparator disable
1: Comparator enable
This is the PLT Comparator 1 on/off control bit. If the comparator is disabled, the comparator output will be cleared to 0. Therefore, PLTC1OUT=0 when PLTC1POL=0, or PLTC1OUT=1 when PLTC1POL=1.

Bit 5 **PLTC1O**: PLT Comparator 1 debounced output
The PLTC1O is the de-bounce version of PLTC1OUT.
If PLTC1POL=0, the PLTC1O outputs "1" only when the current and previous N samples of PLTC1OUT are "1". If PLTC1POL=1, The PLTC1O outputs "0" only when the current and previous N samples of PLTC1OUT are "0". N depends on PLTC1DEB [1:0] configuration bits.

Bit 4 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 3~2 **PLTC1DEB1~PLTC1DEB0**: PLT Comparator 1 debounce time control
00: No debounce
01: (31~32)×t_{SYS}
10: (63~64)×t_{SYS}
11: (126~127)×t_{SYS}
Note: $t_{SYS}=1/f_{SYS}$

Bit 1~0 **PLTC1IS1~PLTC1IS0**: PLT Comparator 1 current control
Refer to the "Comparator Electrical Characteristics" table for details.

• **PLTC0VOS Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	PLTC0OFM	PLTC0RSP	PLTC0OF4	PLTC0OF3	PLTC0OF2	PLTC0OF1	PLTC0OF0
R/W	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	0	0	1	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 6 **PLTC0OFM**: PLT Comparator 0 normal operation or input offset voltage calibration mode selection
0: Normal operation
1: Offset calibration mode

Bit 5 **PLTC0RSP**: PLT Comparator 0 input offset voltage calibration reference selection
0: Input reference voltage comes from C0NI
1: Input reference voltage comes from C0PI

Bit 4~0 **PLTC0OF4~PLTC0OF0**: PLT Comparator 0 input offset voltage calibration control
This 5-bit field is used to perform the PLT comparator 0 input offset calibration operation and the value for the PLT Comparator 0 input offset calibration can be restored into this bit field. More detailed information is described in the "Comparator Input Offset Calibration" section.

• **PLTC1VOS Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	PLTC1OFM	PLTC1RSP	PLTC1OF4	PLTC1OF3	PLTC1OF2	PLTC1OF1	PLTC1OF0
R/W	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	0	0	1	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 6 **PLTC1OFM**: PLT Comparator 1 normal operation or input offset voltage calibration mode selection
0: Normal operation
1: Offset calibration mode

Bit 5 **PLTC1RSP**: PLT Comparator 1 input offset voltage calibration reference selection
0: Input reference voltage comes from C1NI
1: Input reference voltage comes from C1PI

Bit 4~0 **PLTC1OF4~PLTC1OF0**: PLT Comparator 1 input offset voltage calibration control
This 5-bit field is used to perform the PLT comparator 1 input offset calibration operation and the value for the PLT Comparator 1 input offset calibration can be restored into this bit field. More detailed information is described in the "Comparator Input Offset Calibration" section.

• **PLTCHYC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	PLTCXOSW	PLTC1POL	PLTC0POL	PLTC1HYS1	PLTC1HYS0	PLTC0HYS1	PLTC0HYS0
R/W	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 6 **PLTCXOSW**: Comparator 0 or Comparator 1 output selection
0: Comparator 0 Output
1: Comparator 1 Output
This is the Comparator 0 or Comparator 1 output selection bit. If the bit is zero, then the PLTC0O bit will be output indicating the output condition of the comparator 0. If the bit is high the comparator PLTC1O bit will be output indicating the output condition of the comparator 1.

Bit 5 **PLTC1POL**: PLT Comparator 1 output polarity control
0: Non-invert
1: Invert
This is the PLT Comparator 1 polarity bit. If the bit is zero, then the PLTC1OUT bit will reflect the non-inverted output condition of the comparator. If the bit is high the comparator PLTC1OUT bit will be inverted.

Bit 4 **PLTC0POL**: PLT Comparator 0 output polarity control
0: Non-invert
1: Invert
This is the PLT Comparator 0 polarity bit. If the bit is zero, then the PLTC0OUT bit will reflect the non-inverted output condition of the comparator 0. If the bit is high the comparator PLTC0OUT bit will be inverted.

Bit 3~2 **PLTC1HYS1~PLTC1HYS0**: PLT Comparator 1 hysteresis voltage window control
Refer to "Comparator Characteristics" table for details.

Bit 1~0 **PLTC0HYS1~PLTC0HYS0**: PLT Comparator 0 hysteresis voltage window control
Refer to "Comparator Characteristics" table for details.

• **PLTAC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	PLTAEN	PLTAO	—	—	—	—	PLTABW
R/W	—	R/W	R	—	—	—	—	R/W
POR	—	0	0	—	—	—	—	0

Bit 7 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 6 **PLTAEN**: PLT OPA enable or disable control
0: Disable (OPAO high impedenece)
1: Enable

Bit 5 **PLTAO**: PLT OPA output status (positive logic)
This bit is read only.
When the PLTAOFM bit is set to 1, PLTAO is defined as PLT OPA output status, refer to Offset calibration procedure. When the PLTAOFM bit is cleared to 0, this bit will be fixed at a low level.

Bit 4~1 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 0 **PLTABW**: PLT OPA Gain bandwith control bit
0: 600kHz
1: 2MHz
Refer to "Operational Amplifier Electrical Characteristics" table for details.

• **PLTAVOS Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PLTAOFM	PLTARSP	PLTAOF5	PLTAOF4	PLTAOF3	PLTAOF2	PLTAOF1	PLTAOF0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 **PLTAOFM**: PLT OPA normal operation or input offset voltage cancellation mode selection
0: Normal operation
1: Offset calibration mode

Bit 6 **PLTARSP**: PLT OPA input offset voltage calibration reference selection
0: Input reference voltage comes from ANI
1: Input reference voltage comes from API

Bit 5~0 **PLTAOF5~PLTAOF0**: PLT OPA input offset voltage calibration control
This 6-bit field is used to perform the PLT OPA input offset calibration operation and the value for the PLT OPA input offset calibration can be restored into this bit filed. More detailed information is described in the "Operational Amplifier Input Offset Calibration" section.

Offset Calibration Procedure

To operate in the input offset calibration mode for the PLT Operational Amplifier or the Comparators, the PLTAOFM or PLTCnOFM bit should first be set to "1" to select the input offset voltage calibration mode. Note that as the comparator or Operational Amplifier input is from the PLRX or PLIS pin which is pin-shared with I/O or other functions, before the calibration, they should be configured as PLT comparator or operational amplifier input pin function first.

Comparator Input Offset Calibration

Step 1. Set PLTCnOFM=1 and PLTCnRSP=1, the PLT Comparator n is now operating in the comparator input offset calibration mode, S0 and S2 on or S3 and S5 on. To make sure V_{CnOS} as minimal as possible after calibration, the input reference voltage in calibration should be the same as input DC operating voltage in normal operation.

Step 2. Set PLTCnOF[4:0]=00000 and read the PLTCnOUT bit.

Step 3. Increase the PLTCnOF[4:0] value by 1 and then read the PLTCnOUT bit.

If the PLTCnOUT bit state has not changed, then repeat Step 3 until the PLTCnOUT bit state has changed.

If the PLTCnOUT bit state has changed, record the PLTCnOF[4:0] value as V_{CnOS1} and then go to Step 4.

Step 4. Set PLTCnOF[4:0]=11111 and then read the PLTCnOUT bit.

Step 5. Decrease the PLTCnOF[4:0] value by 1 and then read the PLTCnOUT bit.

If the PLTCnOUT bit state has not changed, then repeat Step 5 until the PLTCnOUT bit state has changed.

If the PLTCnOUT bit state has changed, record the PLTCnOF[4:0] value as V_{CnOS2} and then go to Step 6.

Step 6. Restore the PLT Comparator n input offset calibration value V_{CnOS} into the PLTCnOF[4:0] bit field. The offset Calibration procedure is now finished.

$V_{CnOS}=(V_{CnOS1}+V_{CnOS2})/2$. If $(V_{CnOS1}+V_{CnOS2})/2$ is not integral, discard the decimal.

Operational Amplifier Input Offset Calibration

Step1. Set PLTAOFM=1 and PTLARSP=1, the PLT Operational Amplifier is now under offset calibration mode, S6 and S8 on. To make sure V_{AOS} as minimal as possible after calibration, the input reference voltage in calibration should be the same as input DC operating voltage in normal mode operation.

Step2. Set PTLAOF[5:0]=000000 and then read PTLAO bit

Step3. Increase the PLTAOF[5:0] value by 1 and then read the PLTAO bit.

If the PLTAO bit state has not changed, then repeat Step 3 until the PLTAO bit state has changed.

If the PLTAO bit state has changed, record the PLTAOF[5:0] value as V_{AOS1} and then go to Step 4.

Step4. Set PTLAOF [5:0]=111111 then read PLTAO bit.

Step5. Decrease the PLTAOF[5:0] value by 1 and then read the PLTAO bit.

If the PLTAO bit state has not changed, then repeat Step 5 until the PLTAO bit state has changed.

If the PLTAO bit state has changed, record the PLTAOF[5:0] value as V_{AOS2} and then go to Step 6.

Step6. Restore the PLT Operational Amplifier input offset calibration value V_{AOS} into the PLTAOF[5:0] bit field. The offset Calibration procedure is now finished.

$V_{AOS}=(V_{AOS1}+V_{AOS2})/2$. If $(V_{AOS1}+V_{AOS2})/2$ is not integral, discard the decimal.

Analog to Digital Converter

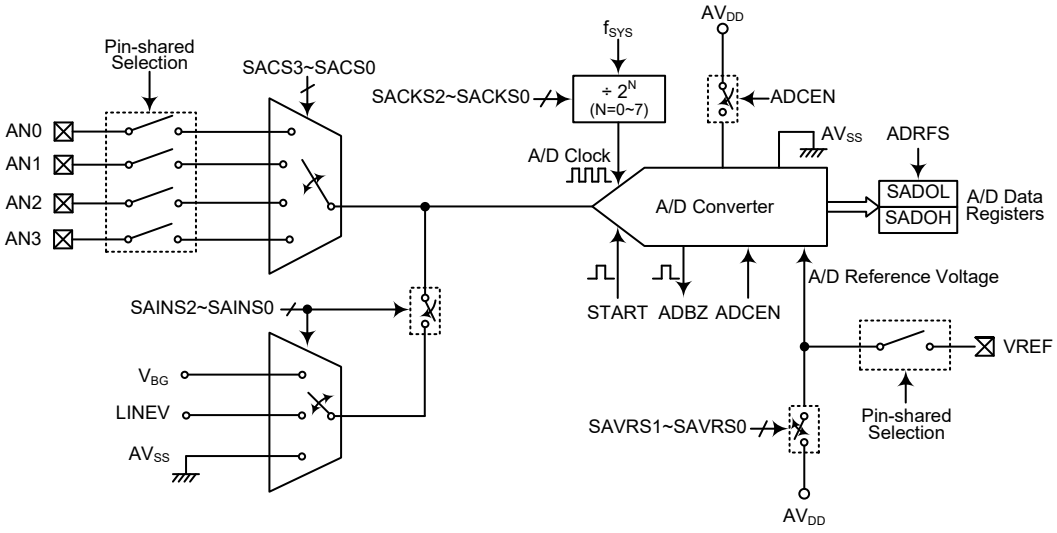
The need to interface to real world analog signals is a common requirement for many electronic systems. However, to properly process these signals by a microcontroller, they must first be converted into digital signals by A/D converters. By integrating the A/D conversion electronic circuitry into the microcontroller, the need for external components is reduced significantly with the corresponding follow-on benefits of lower costs and reduced component space requirements.

A/D Converter Overview

The device contains a multi-channel 10-bit analog to digital converter which can directly interface to external analog signals, such as that from sensors or other control signals and convert these signals directly into a 10-bit digital value. It also can convert the internal signals, the bandgap reference voltage V_{BG}, and the PLT operational amplifier output signal, LINEV, into a 10-bit digital value. The external or internal analog signal to be converted is determined by the SAINS2~SAINS0 bits together with the SACS3~SACS0 bits. More detailed information about the A/D input signal is described in the "A/D Converter Control Registers" and "A/D Converter Input Signals" sections respectively.

External Input Channels	Internal Signals	Channel Select Bits
4: AN0~AN3	3: V_{BG}, LINEV, AV_{SS}	SAINS2~SAINS0, SACS3~SACS0

The accompanying block diagram shows the overall internal structure of the A/D converter, together with its associated registers.



A/D Converter Structure

A/D Converter Register Description

Overall operation of the A/D converter is controlled using several registers. A read only register pair exists to store the A/D converter data 10-bit value. The remaining two registers are control registers which setup the operating and control function of the A/D converter.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
SADOH (ADRFS=0)	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2
SADOH (ADRFS=1)	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8
SADOL (ADRFS=0)	D1	D0	—	—	—	—	—	—
SADOL (ADRFS=1)	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
SADC0	START	ADBZ	ADCEN	ADRFS	SACS3	SACS2	SACS1	SACS0
SADC1	SAINS2	SAINS1	SAINS0	SAVRS1	SAVRS0	SACKS2	SACKS1	SACKS0

A/D Converter Register List

A/D Converter Data Registers – SADOL, SADOH

As the device contains an internal 10-bit A/D converter, it requires two data registers to store the converted value. These are a high byte register, known as SADOH, and a low byte register, known as SADOL. After the conversion process takes place, these registers can be directly read by the microcontroller to obtain the digitised conversion value. As only 10 bits of the 16-bit register space is utilised, the format in which the data is stored is controlled by the ADRFS bit in the SADC0 register as shown in the accompanying table. D0~D9 are the A/D conversion result data bits. Any unused bits will be read as zero. Note that A/D Converter data register contents will be unchanged if the A/D converter is disabled.

ADRFS	SADOH								SADOL							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0	0	0	0	0	0	0
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0

A/D Data Registers

A/D Converter Control Registers – SADC0, SADC1

To control the function and operation of the A/D converter, two control registers known as SADC0 and SADC1 are provided. These 8-bit registers define functions such as the selection of which analog channel is connected to the internal A/D converter, the digitised data format, the A/D clock source as well as controlling the start function and monitoring the A/D converter busy status. As the device contains only one actual analog to digital converter hardware circuit, each of the external or internal analog signal inputs must be routed to the converter. The SACS3~SACS0 bits in the SADC0 register are used to determine which external channel input is selected to be converted. The SAINS2~SAINS0 bits in the SADC1 register are used to determine that the analog signal to be converted comes from the internal analog signal or external analog channel input.

The relevant pin-shared function selection bits determine which pins on I/O Ports are used as analog inputs for the A/D converter input and which pins are not to be used as the A/D converter input. When the pin is selected to be an A/D input, its original function whether it is an I/O or other pin-shared function will be removed. In addition, any internal pull-high resistor connected to the pin will be automatically removed if the pin is selected to be an A/D converter input.

• **SADC0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	START	ADBZ	ADCEN	ADRFS	SACS3	SACS2	SACS1	SACS0
R/W	R/W	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 **START**: Start the A/D conversion
0→1→0: Start
This bit is used to initiate an A/D conversion process. The bit is normally low but if set high and then cleared low again, the A/D converter will initiate a conversion process.

Bit 6 **ADBZ**: A/D converter busy flag
0: No A/D conversion is in progress
1: A/D conversion is in progress
This read only flag is used to indicate whether the A/D conversion is in progress or not. When the START bit is set from low to high and then to low again, the ADBZ flag will be set to 1 to indicate that the A/D conversion is initiated. The ADBZ flag will be cleared to 0 after the A/D conversion is complete.

Bit 5 **ADCEN**: A/D converter function enable control
0: Disable
1: Enable
This bit controls the A/D internal function. This bit should be set to one to enable the A/D converter. If the bit is set low, then the A/D converter will be switched off reducing the device power consumption. When the A/D converter function is disabled, the contents of the A/D data register pair known as SADOH and SADOL will be unchanged.

Bit 4 **ADRFS**: A/D converter data format selection
0: A/D converter data format → SADOH=D[9:4]; SADOL=D[3:0]
1: A/D converter data format → SADOH=D[9:8]; SADOL=D[7:0]
This bit controls the format of the 10-bit converted A/D value in the two A/D data registers. Details are provided in the A/D data register section.

Bit 3~0 **SACS3~SACS0**: A/D converter external analog channel input selection
0000: AN0
0001: AN1
0010: AN2
0011: AN3
0100~1111: Non-existed channel, the input will be floating

• **SADC1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	SAINS2	SAINS1	SAINS0	SAVRS1	SAVRS0	SACKS2	SACKS1	SACKS0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~5 **SAINS2~SAINS0**: A/D converter input signal selection
000: External input – External analog channel input
001: Internal input – Internal bandgap reference voltage, V_{BG}
010: Internal input – Internal PLT operational amplifier output signal, LINEV
011~100: Internal input – AV_{SS}
101~111: External input – External analog channel input
Care must be taken if the SAINS2~SAINS0 bits are set from “001” to “100” to select the internal analog signal to be converted. When the internal analog signal is selected to be converted, the external input pin must never be selected as the A/D input signal by properly setting the SACS3~SACS0 bits with a value from “0100” to “1111”. Otherwise, the external channel input will be connected together with the internal analog signal. This will result in unpredictable situations such as an irreversible damage.

Bit 4~3 **SAVRS1~SAVRS0**: A/D converter reference voltage selection
00:From external VREF pin
01: Internal A/D converter power, AV_{DD}
1x: From external VREF pin
These bits are used to select the A/D converter reference voltage. Care must be taken if the SAVRS1~SAVRS0 bits are set to "01" to select the internal A/D converter power as the reference voltage source. When the internal A/D converter power is selected as the reference voltage, the VREF pin cannot be configured as the reference voltage input by properly configuring the corresponding pin-shared function control bits. Otherwise, the external input voltage on VREF pin will be connected to the internal A/D converter power.

Bit 2~0 **SACKS2~SACKS0**: A/D conversion clock source selection
000: f_{SYS}
001: $f_{SYS}/2$
010: $f_{SYS}/4$
011: $f_{SYS}/8$
100: $f_{SYS}/16$
101: $f_{SYS}/32$
110: $f_{SYS}/64$
111: $f_{SYS}/128$
These three bits are used to select the clock source for the A/D converter.

A/D Converter Operation

The START bit in the SADC0 register is used to start the AD conversion. When the microcontroller sets this bit from low to high and then low again, an analog to digital conversion cycle will be initiated.

The ADBZ bit in the SADC0 register is used to indicate whether the analog to digital conversion process is in progress or not. This bit will be automatically set to 1 by the microcontroller after an A/D conversion is successfully initiated. When the A/D conversion is complete, the ADBZ will be cleared to 0. In addition, the corresponding A/D interrupt request flag will be set in the interrupt control register, and if the interrupts are enabled, an appropriate internal interrupt signal will be generated. This A/D internal interrupt signal will direct the program flow to the associated A/D internal interrupt address for processing. If the A/D internal interrupt is disabled, the microcontroller can poll the ADBZ bit in the SADC0 register to check whether it has been cleared as an alternative method of detecting the end of an A/D conversion cycle.

The clock source for the A/D converter, which originates from the system clock f_{SYS}, can be chosen to be either f_{SYS} or a subdivided version of f_{SYS}. The division ratio value is determined by the SACKS2~SACKS0 bits in the SADC1 register. Although the A/D clock source is determined by the system clock f_{SYS} and by bits SACKS2~SACKS0, there are some limitations on the maximum A/D clock source speed that can be selected. As the recommended range of permissible A/D clock period, t_{ADCK}, is from 0.5μs to 10μs, care must be taken for system clock frequencies. For example, as the system clock operates at a frequency of 8MHz, the SACKS2~SACKS0 bits should not be set to 000, 001 or 111. Doing so will give A/D clock periods that are less or larger than the minimum or maximum A/D clock period which may result in inaccurate A/D conversion values. Refer to the following table for examples, where values marked with an asterisk * show where special care must be taken, as the values may be less or larger than the specified A/D Clock Period range.

f_{SYS}	A/D Clock Period (t_{ADCK})							
	SACKS[2:0] =000 (f_{SYS})	SACKS[2:0] =001 ($f_{SYS}/2$)	SACKS[2:0] =010 ($f_{SYS}/4$)	SACKS[2:0] =011 ($f_{SYS}/8$)	SACKS[2:0] =100 ($f_{SYS}/16$)	SACKS[2:0] =101 ($f_{SYS}/32$)	SACKS[2:0] =110 ($f_{SYS}/64$)	SACKS[2:0] =111 ($f_{SYS}/128$)
1MHz	1μs	2μs	4μs	8μs	16μs *	32μs *	64μs *	128μs *
2MHz	500ns	1μs	2μs	4μs	8μs	16μs *	32μs *	64μs *
4MHz	250ns *	500ns	1μs	2μs	4μs	8μs	16μs *	32μs *
8MHz	125ns *	250ns *	500ns	1μs	2μs	4μs	8μs	16μs *

A/D Clock Period Examples

Controlling the power on/off function of the A/D converter circuitry is implemented using the ADCEN bit in the SADC0 register. This bit must be set high to power on the A/D converter. When the ADCEN bit is set high to power on the A/D converter internal circuitry a certain delay, as indicated in the timing diagram, must be allowed before an A/D conversion is initiated. Even if no pins are selected for use as A/D inputs, if the ADCEN bit is high, then some power will still be consumed. In power conscious applications it is therefore recommended that the ADCEN is set low to reduce power consumption when the A/D converter function is not being used.

A/D Converter Reference Voltage

The reference voltage supply to the A/D converter can be supplied from the power supply AV_{DD}, or from an external reference source supplied on pin VREF. The desired selection is made using the SAVRS1~SAVRS0 bits. When the SAVRS bit field is set to "01", the A/D converter reference voltage will come from the AV_{DD}. Otherwise, if the SAVRS bit field is set to any other value except "01", the A/D converter reference voltage will come from the VREF pin. As the VREF pin is pin-shared with other functions, when the VREF pin is selected as the reference voltage supply pin, the VREF pin-shared function control bit should be properly configured to disable other pin function. However, if the internal A/D converter power AV_{DD} is selected as the reference voltage, the VREF pin must not be configured as the reference voltage input function to avoid the internal connection between the VREF pin and the power supply. The analog input values must not be allowed to exceed the value of the selected A/D reference voltage.

A/D Converter Input Signals

All the external A/D analog channel input pins are pin-shared with the I/O pins as well as other functions. The corresponding control bits for each A/D external input pin in the PxS0 and PxS1 registers determine whether the input pins are setup as A/D converter analog input channel or whether they have other functions. If the pin is setup to be as an A/D analog channel input, the original pin functions will be disabled. In this way, pins can be changed under program control to change their function between A/D inputs and other functions. All pull high resistors, which are setup through register programming, will be automatically disconnected if the pins are setup as A/D inputs. Note that it is not necessary to first setup the A/D pin as an input in the port control register to enable the A/D input as when the pin-shared function control bits enable an A/D input, the status of the port control register will be overridden.

There are some internal analog signals derived from the bandgap reference voltage, V_{BG}, and PLT operational amplifier output signal, LINEV, which can be connected to the A/D converter as the analog input signal by configuring the SAINS2~SAINS0 bits. If the external channel input is selected to be converted, the SAINS2~SAINS0 bits should be set to "000" or "101~111" and the SACS3~SACS0 bits can determine which external channel is selected. If the internal analog signal is selected to be converted, the SACS3~SACS0 bits must be configured with an appropriate value to switch off the external analog channel input. Otherwise, the internal analog signal will be connected together with the external channel input. This will result in unpredictable situations.

SAINS[2:0]	SACS[3:0]	Input Signals	Description
000, 101~111	0000~0011	AN0~AN3	External pin analog input
	0100~1111	—	Non-existed channel, input is floating
001	0100~1111	V_{BG}	Internal Bandgap reference voltage
010	0100~1111	LINEV	Internal PLT operational amplifier output signal
011~100	0100~1111	AV_{SS}	Ground

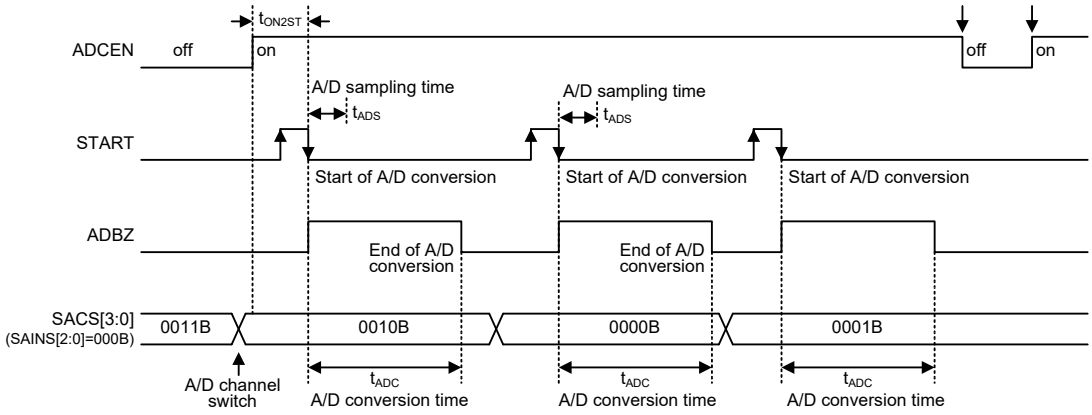
A/D Converter Input Signal Selection

Conversion Rate and Timing Diagram

A complete A/D conversion contains two parts, data sampling and data conversion. The data sampling which is defined as t_{ADS} takes 4 A/D clock cycles and the data conversion takes 10 A/D clock cycles. Therefore, a total of 14 A/D clock cycles for an external input A/D conversion which is defined as t_{ADC} are necessary.

Maximum single A/D conversion rate=A/D clock period÷14

The accompanying diagram shows graphically the various stages involved in an analog to digital conversion process and its associated timing. After an A/D conversion process has been initiated by the application program, the microcontroller internal hardware will begin to carry out the conversion, during which time the program can continue with other functions. The time taken for the A/D conversion is 14 t_{ADCK} clock cycles where t_{ADCK} is equal to the A/D clock period.



A/D Conversion Timing – External Channel Input

Summary of A/D Conversion Steps

The following summarises the individual steps that should be executed in order to implement an A/D conversion process.

- Step 1
  Select the required A/D conversion clock by correctly programming bits SACKS2~SACKS0 in the SADC1 register.
- Step 2
  Enable the A/D converter by setting the ADCEN bit in the SADC0 register to 1.
- Step 3
  Select which signal is to be connected to the internal A/D converter by correctly configuring the SAINS2~SAINS0 bits.
  Select the external channel input to be converted, go to Step 4.
  Select the internal analog signal to be converted, go to Step 5.

- Step 4
  If the A/D input signal comes from the external channel input selected by configuring the SAINS2~SAINS0 bit field, the corresponding pins should be configured as A/D input function by configuring the relevant pin-shared function control bits. The desired analog channel then should be selected by configuring the SACS3~SACS0 bit field. After this step, go to Step 6.
- Step 5
  Before the A/D input signal is selected to come from the internal analog signal by configuring the SAINS2~SAINS0 bit field, the corresponding external input pin must be switched to a non-existed channel input by properly configured the SACS3~SACS0 bits. The desired internal analog signal then can be selected by configuring the SAINS2~SAINS0 bit field. After this step, go to Step 6.
- Step 6
  Select the reference voltage source by configuring the SAVRS1~SAVRS0 bits in the SADC1 register. Care should be taken in this step which can refer to the A/D Converter Reference Voltage section for details.
- Step 7
  Select A/D converter output data format by setting the ADRFS bit in the SADC0 register.
- Step 8
  If A/D conversion interrupt is used, the interrupt control registers must be correctly configured to ensure the A/D interrupt function is active. The master interrupt control bit, EMI, and the A/D conversion interrupt control bit, ADE, must both be set high in advance.
- Step 9
  The A/D conversion procedure can now be initialized by setting the START bit from low to high and then low again.
- Step 10
  If A/D conversion is in progress, the ADBZ flag will be set high. After the A/D conversion process is complete, the ADBZ flag will go low and then the output data can be read from SADOH and SADOL registers.

Note: When checking for the end of the conversion process, if the method of polling the ADBZ bit in the SADC0 register is used, the interrupt enable step above can be omitted.

Programming Considerations

During microcontroller operations where the A/D converter is not being used, the A/D internal circuitry can be switched off to reduce power consumption, by clearing bit ADCEN to 0 in the SADC0 register. When this happens, the internal A/D converter circuits will not consume power irrespective of what analog voltage is applied to their input lines. If the A/D converter input lines are used as normal I/O pins, then care must be taken as if the input voltage is not at a valid logic level, then this may lead to some increase in power consumption.

A/D Conversion Function

As the device contains a 10-bit A/D converter, its full-scale converted digitised value is equal to 3FFH. Since the full-scale analog input value is equal to the actual A/D converter reference voltage, V_{REF}, this gives a single bit analog input value of V_{REF} divided by 1024.

$$1\ LSB=V_{REF}\div 1024$$

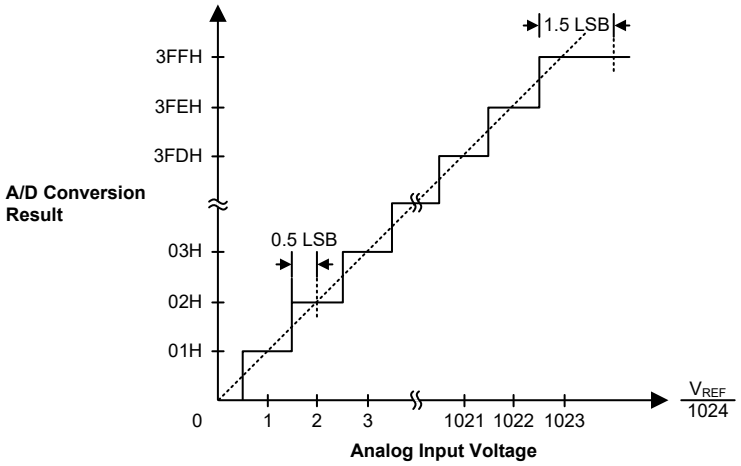
The A/D Converter input voltage value can be calculated using the following equation:

$$\text{A/D input voltage}=\text{A/D output digital value}\times(V_{REF}\div 1024)$$

The diagram shows the ideal transfer function between the analog input value and the digitised

output value for the A/D converter. Except for the digitised zero value, the subsequent digitised values will change at a point 0.5 LSB below where they would change without the offset, and the last full scale digitised value will change at a point 1.5 LSB below the V_{REF} level.

Note that here the V_{REF} voltage is the actual A/D converter reference voltage determined by the SAVRS field.



Ideal A/D Transfer Function

A/D Conversion Programming Examples

The following two programming examples illustrate how to setup and implement an A/D conversion. In the first example, the method of polling the ADBZ bit in the SADC0 register is used to detect when the conversion cycle is complete, whereas in the second example, the A/D interrupt is used to determine when the conversion is complete.

Example: using an ADBZ polling method to detect the end of conversion

```
clr  ADE              ; disable ADC interrupt
mov  a, 03H
mov  SADC1, a         ; select input signal from external channel input, reference
                      ; voltage from VREF pin, fSYS/8 as A/D clock
mov  a, 32h           ; setup PAS1 register to configure pin AN0 and VREF
mov  PAS1, a
mov  a, 20h
mov  SADC0, a         ; enable A/D converter and connect AN0 channel to A/D converter
:
start_conversion:
clr  START            ; high pulse on start bit to initiate conversion
set  START            ; reset A/D
clr  START            ; start A/D
polling_EOC:
sz   ADBZ             ; poll the SADC0 register ADBZ bit to detect end of A/D conversion
jmp  polling_EOC      ; continue polling
mov  a, SADOL         ; read low byte conversion result value
mov  SADOL_buffer, a  ; save result to user defined register
mov  a, SADOH         ; read high byte conversion result value
mov  SADOH_buffer, a  ; save result to user defined register
:
:
jmp  start_conversion ; start next A/D conversion
```

Example: using the interrupt method to detect the end of conversion

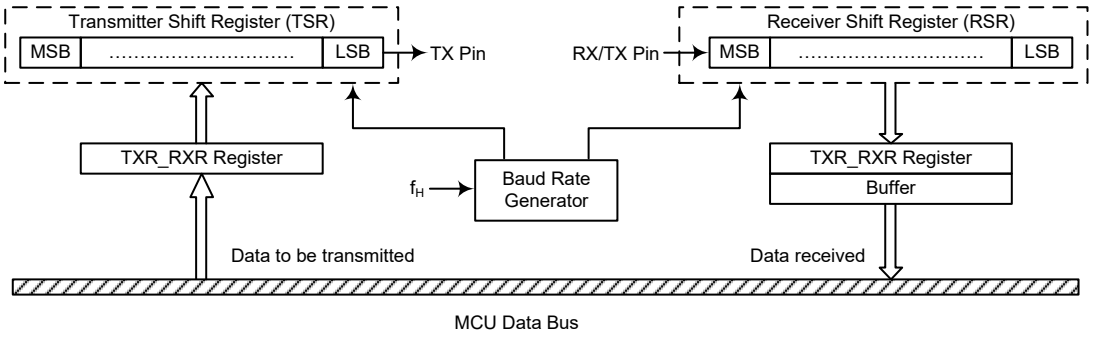
```
clr  ADE              ; disable ADC interrupt
mov  a, 03H
mov  SADC1, a         ; select input signal from external channel input, reference voltage
                      ; from VREF pin, fSYS/8 as A/D clock
mov  a, 32h           ; setup PAS1 register to configure pin AN0 and VREF
mov  PAS1, a
mov  a, 20h
mov  SADC0, a         ; enable A/D converter and connect AN0 channel to A/D converter
Start_conversion:
clr  START            ; high pulse on START bit to initiate conversion
set  START            ; reset A/D
clr  START            ; start A/D
clr  ADF              ; clear ADC interrupt request flag
set  ADE              ; enable ADC interrupt
set  EMI              ; enable global interrupt
:
:
; ADC interrupt service routine
ADC_ISR:
mov  acc_stack, a     ; save ACC to user defined memory
mov  a, STATUS
mov  status_stack, a  ; save STATUS to user defined memory
:
:
mov  a, SADOL         ; read low byte conversion result value
mov  SADOL_buffer, a  ; save result to user defined register
mov  a, SADOH         ; read high byte conversion result value
mov  SADOH_buffer, a  ; save result to user defined register
:
:
EXIT_INT_ISR:
mov  a, status_stack
mov  STATUS, a        ; restore STATUS from user defined memory
mov  a, acc_stack     ; restore ACC from user defined memory
reti
```

UART Interface

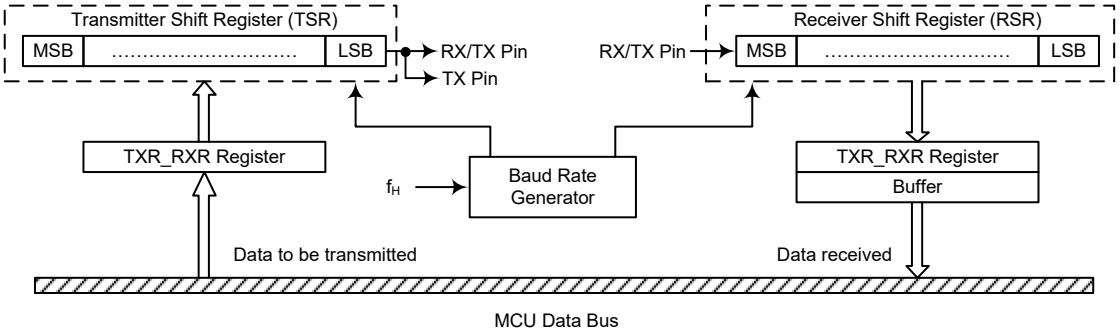
The device contains an integrated full-duplex or half-duplex asynchronous serial communications UART interface that enables communication with external devices that contain a serial interface. The UART function has many features and can transmit and receive data serially by transferring a frame of data with eight or nine data bits per transmission as well as being able to detect errors when the data is overwritten or incorrectly framed. The UART function possesses its own internal interrupt which can be used to indicate when a reception occurs or when a transmission terminates.

The integrated UART function contains the following features:

- Full-duplex or half-duplex (single wire mode) asynchronous communication
- 8 or 9 bits character length
- Even, odd or no parity options
- One or two stop bits
- Baud rate generator with 8-bit prescaler
- Parity, framing, noise and overrun error detection
- Support for interrupt on address detect (last character bit=1)
- Separately enabled transmitter and receiver
- 2-byte Deep FIFO Receive Data Buffer
- RX/TX pin wake-up function
- Transmit and receive interrupts
- Interrupts can be triggered by the following conditions:
  - Transmitter Empty
  - Transmitter Idle
  - Receiver Full
  - Receiver Overrun
  - Address Mode Detect



UART Data Transfer Block Diagram – SWM=0



UART Data Transfer Block Diagram – SWM=1

UART External Pins

To communicate with an external serial interface, the internal UART has two external pins known as TX and RX/TX. The TX and RX/TX pins are the UART transmitter and receiver pins respectively. The TX and RX/TX pin function should first be selected by the corresponding pin-shared function selection register before the UART function is used. Along with the UARTEN bit, the TXEN and RXEN bits, if set, will setup these pins to their respective TX output and RX/TX input conditions and disable any pull-high resistor option which may exist on the TX and RX/TX pins. When the TX or RX/TX pin function is disabled by clearing the UARTEN, TXEN or RXEN bit, the TX or RX/TX pin will be set to a floating state. At this time whether the internal pull-high resistor is connected to the TX or RX/TX pin or not is determined by the corresponding I/O pull-high function control bit.

UART Single Wire Mode

The UART function also supports the Single Wire Mode communication which is selected using the SWM bit in the UCR3 register. When the SWM bit is set high, the UART function will be in the single wire mode. In the single wire mode, a single RX/TX pin can be used to transmit and receive data depending upon the corresponding control bits. When the RXEN bit is set high, the RX/TX pin is used as a receiver pin. When the RXEN bit is cleared to zero and the TXEN bit is set high, the RX/TX pin will act as a transmitter pin.

It is recommended not to set both the RXEN and TXEN bits high in the single wire mode. If both the RXEN and TXEN bits are set high, the RXEN bit will have the priority and the UART will act as a receiver.

It is important to note that the functional description in this UART chapter, which is described from the full-duplex communication standpoint, also applies to the half-duplex (single wire mode) communication except the pin usage. In the single wire mode, the TX pin mentioned in this chapter should be replaced by the RX/TX pin to understand the whole UART single wire mode function.

In the single wire mode, the data can also be transmitted on the TX pin in a transmission operation with proper software configurations. Therefore, the data will be output on the RX/TX and TX pins.

UART Data Transfer Scheme

The UART Data Transfer Block Diagram shows the overall data transfer structure arrangement for the UART. The actual data to be transmitted from the MCU is first transferred to the TXR_RXR register by the application program. The data will then be transferred to the Transmit Shift Register from where it will be shifted out, LSB first, onto the TX pin at a rate controlled by the Baud Rate Generator. Only the TXR_RXR register is mapped onto the MCU Data Memory, the Transmit Shift Register is not mapped and is therefore inaccessible to the application program.

Data to be received by the UART is accepted on the external RX/TX pin, from where it is shifted in, LSB first, to the Receiver Shift Register at a rate controlled by the Baud Rate Generator. When the shift register is full, the data will then be transferred from the shift register to the internal TXR_RXR register, where it is buffered and can be manipulated by the application program. Only the TXR_RXR register is mapped onto the MCU Data Memory, the Receiver Shift Register is not mapped and is therefore inaccessible to the application program.

It should be noted that the actual register for data transmission and reception only exists as a single shared register in the Data Memory. This shared register known as the TXR_RXR register is used for both data transmission and data reception.

UART Status and Control Registers

There are six control registers associated with the UART function. The USR, UCR1, UCR2 and UCR3 registers control the overall function of the UART, while the BRG register controls the Baud rate. The actual data to be transmitted and received on the serial interface is managed through the TXR_RXR data register.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
USR	PERR	NF	FERR	OERR	RIDLE	RXIF	TIDLE	TXIF
UCR1	UARTEN	BNO	PREN	PRT	STOPS	TXBRK	RX8	TX8
UCR2	TXEN	RXEN	BRGH	ADDEN	WAKE	RIE	TIIE	TEIE
UCR3	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SWM
TXR_RXR	TXRX7	TXRX6	TXRX5	TXRX4	TXRX3	TXRX2	TXRX1	TXRX0
BRG	BRG7	BRG6	BRG5	BRG4	BRG3	BRG2	BRG1	BRG0

UART Register List

• USR Register

The USR register is the status register for the UART, which can be read by the program to determine the present status of the UART. All flags within the USR register are read only. Further explanation on each of the flags is given below:

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PERR	NF	FERR	OERR	RIDLE	RXIF	TIDLE	TXIF
R/W	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
POR	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1

Bit 7 **PERR**: Parity error flag
0: No parity error is detected
1: Parity error is detected
The PERR flag is the parity error flag. When this read only flag is "0", it indicates a parity error has not been detected. When the flag is "1", it indicates that the parity of the received word is incorrect. This error flag is applicable only if Parity mode (odd or even) is selected. The flag can also be cleared to zero by a software sequence which involves a read to the status register USR followed by an access to the TXR_RXR data register.

Bit 6 **NF**: Noise flag
0: No noise is detected
1: Noise is detected
The NF flag is the noise flag. When this read only flag is "0", it indicates no noise condition. When the flag is "1", it indicates that the UART has detected noise on the receiver input. The NF flag is set during the same cycle as the RXIF flag but will not be set in the case of as overrun. The NF flag can be cleared to zero by a software

sequence which will involve a read to the status register USR followed by an access to the TXR_RXR data register.

Bit 5 **FERR**: Framing error flag
0: No framing error is detected
1: Framing error is detected

The FERR flag is the framing error flag. When this read only flag is "0", it indicates that there is no framing error. When the flag is "1", it indicates that a framing error has been detected for the current character. The flag can also be cleared to zero by a software sequence which will involve a read to the status register USR followed by an access to the TXR_RXR data register.

Bit 4 **OERR**: Overrun error flag
0: No overrun error is detected
1: Overrun error is detected

The OERR flag is the overrun error flag which indicates when the receiver buffer has overflowed. When this read only flag is "0", it indicates that there is no overrun error. When the flag is "1", it indicates that an overrun error occurs which will inhibit further transfers to the TXR_RXR receive data register. The flag is cleared to zero by a software sequence, which is a read to the status register USR followed by an access to the TXR_RXR data register.

Bit 3 **RIDLE**: Receiver status
0: Data reception is in progress (Data being received)
1: No data reception is in progress (Receiver is idle)

The RIDLE flag is the receiver status flag. When this read only flag is "0", it indicates that the receiver is between the initial detection of the start bit and the completion of the stop bit. When the flag is "1", it indicates that the receiver is idle. Between the completion of the stop bit and the detection of the next start bit, the RIDLE bit is "1" indicating that the UART receiver is idle and the RX/TX pin stays in logic high condition.

Bit 2 **RXIF**: Receive TXR_RXR data register status
0: TXR_RXR data register is empty
1: TXR_RXR data register has available data

The RXIF flag is the receive data register status flag. When this read only flag is "0", it indicates that the TXR_RXR read data register is empty. When the flag is "1", it indicates that the TXR_RXR read data register contains new data. When the contents of the shift register are transferred to the TXR_RXR register, an interrupt is generated if RIE=1 in the UCR2 register. If one or more errors are detected in the received word, the appropriate receive-related flags NF, FERR, and/or PERR are set within the same clock cycle. The RXIF flag will eventually be cleared to zero when the USR register is read with RXIF set, followed by a read from the TXR_RXR register, and if the TXR_RXR register has no more new data available.

Bit 1 **TIDLE**: Transmission idle
0: Data transmission is in progress (Data being transmitted)
1: No data transmission is in progress (Transmitter is idle)

The TIDLE flag is known as the transmission complete flag. When this read only flag is "0", it indicates that a transmission is in progress. This flag will be set high when the TXIF flag is "1" and when there is no transmit data or break character being transmitted. When TIDLE is equal to "1", the TX pin becomes idle with the pin state in logic high condition. The TIDLE flag is cleared to zero by reading the USR register with TIDLE set and then writing to the TXR_RXR register. The flag is not generated when a data character or a break is queued and ready to be sent.

Bit 0 **TXIF**: Transmit TXR_RXR data register status
0: Character is not transferred to the transmit shift register
1: Character has transferred to the transmit shift register (TXR_RXR data register is empty)

The TXIF flag is the transmit data register empty flag. When this read only flag is "0", it indicates that the character is not transferred to the transmitter shift register. When the flag is "1", it indicates that the transmitter shift register has received a character from the TXR_RXR data register. The TXIF flag is cleared to zero by reading the UART status register (USR) with TXIF set and then writing to the TXR_RXR data register. Note that when the TXEN bit is set, the TXIF flag bit will also be set since the transmit data register is not yet full.

- **UCR1 Register**

The UCR1 register together with the UCR2 and UCR3 registers are the three UART control registers that are used to set the various options for the UART function, such as overall on/off control, parity control, data transfer bit length, single wire mode communication etc. Further explanation on each of the bits is given below:

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	UARTEN	BNO	PREN	PRT	STOPS	TXBRK	RX8	TX8
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R	W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	x	0

"x": unknown

Bit 7 **UARTEN**: UART function enable control
0: Disable UART. TX and RX/TX pins are in a floating state
1: Enable UART. TX and RX/TX pins can function as UART pins

The UARTEN bit is the UART enable bit. When this bit is equal to "0", the UART will be disabled and the RX/TX pin as well as the TX pin will be in a floating state. When the bit is equal to "1", the UART will be enabled and the TX and RX/TX pins will function as defined by the SWM mode selection bit together with the TXEN and RXEN enable control bits.

When the UART is disabled, it will empty the buffer so any character remaining in the buffer will be discarded. In addition, the value of the baud rate counter will be reset. If the UART is disabled, all error and status flags will be reset. Also the TXEN, RXEN, TXBRK, RXIF, OERR, FERR, PERR and NF bits will be cleared to zero, while the TIDLE, TXIF and RIDLE bits will be set high. Other control bits in UCR1, UCR2, UCR3 and BRG registers will remain unaffected. If the UART is active and the UARTEN bit is cleared to zero, all pending transmissions and receptions will be terminated and the module will be reset as defined above. When the UART is re-enabled, it will restart in the same configuration.

Bit 6 **BNO**: Number of data transfer bits selection
0: 8-bit data transfer
1: 9-bit data transfer

This bit is used to select the data length format, which can have a choice of either 8-bit or 9-bit format. When this bit is equal to "1", a 9-bit data length format will be selected. If the bit is equal to "0", then an 8-bit data length format will be selected. If 9-bit data length format is selected, then bits RX8 and TX8 will be used to store the 9th bit of the received and transmitted data respectively.

Bit 5 **PREN**: Parity function enable control
0: Parity function is disabled
1: Parity function is enabled

This is the parity enable bit. When this bit is equal to "1", the parity function will be enabled. If the bit is equal to "0", then the parity function will be disabled.

Bit 4 **PRT**: Parity type selection bit
0: Even parity for parity generator
1: Odd parity for parity generator

This bit is the parity type selection bit. When this bit is equal to "1", odd parity type will be selected. If the bit is equal to "0", then even parity type will be selected.

Bit 3 **STOPS**: Number of Stop bits selection
0: One stop bit format is used
1: Two stop bits format is used
This bit determines if one or two stop bits are to be used. When this bit is equal to "1", two stop bits are used. If this bit is equal to "0", then only one stop bit is used.

Bit 2 **TXBRK**: Transmit break character
0: No break character is transmitted
1: Break characters transmit
The TXBRK bit is the Transmit Break Character bit. When this bit is "0", there are no break characters and the TX pin operates normally. When the bit is "1", there are transmit break characters and the transmitter will send logic zeros. When this bit is equal to "1", after the buffered data has been transmitted, the transmitter output is held low for a minimum of a 13-bit length and until the TXBRK bit is reset.

Bit 1 **RX8**: Receive data bit 8 for 9-bit data transfer format (read only)
This bit is only used if 9-bit data transfers are used, in which case this bit location will store the 9th bit of the received data known as RX8. The BNO bit is used to determine whether data transfers are in 8-bit or 9-bit format.

Bit 0 **TX8**: Transmit data bit 8 for 9-bit data transfer format (write only)
This bit is only used if 9-bit data transfers are used, in which case this bit location will store the 9th bit of the transmitted data known as TX8. The BNO bit is used to determine whether data transfers are in 8-bit or 9-bit format.

• UCR2 Register

The UCR2 register is the second of the three UART control registers and serves several purposes. One of its main functions is to control the basic enable/disable operation of the UART Transmitter and Receiver as well as enabling the various UART interrupt sources. The register also serves to control the baud rate speed, receiver wake-up enable and the address detect enable. Further explanation on each of the bits is given below:

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	TXEN	RXEN	BRGH	ADDEN	WAKE	RIE	TIIE	TEIE
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 **TXEN**: UART Transmitter enabled control
0: UART transmitter is disabled
1: UART transmitter is enabled
The bit named TXEN is the Transmitter Enable Bit. When this bit is equal to "0", the transmitter will be disabled with any pending data transmissions being aborted. In addition, the buffers will be reset. In this situation the TX pin will be in a floating state. If the TXEN bit is equal to "1" and the UARTEN bit is also equal to "1", the transmitter will be enabled and the TX pin will be controlled by the UART. Clearing the TXEN bit during a transmission will cause the data transmission to be aborted and will reset the transmitter. If this situation occurs, the TX pin will be in a floating state.

Bit 6 **RXEN**: UART Receiver enabled control
0: UART receiver is disabled
1: UART receiver is enabled
The bit named RXEN is the Receiver Enable Bit. When this bit is equal to "0", the receiver will be disabled with any pending data receptions being aborted. In addition, the receive buffers will be reset. In this situation the RX/TX pin will be in a floating state. If the RXEN bit is equal to "1" and the UARTEN bit is also equal to "1", the receiver will be enabled and the RX/TX pin will be controlled by the UART. Clearing the RXEN bit during a reception will cause the data reception to be aborted and will reset the receiver. If this situation occurs, the RX/TX pin will be in a floating state.

Bit 5 **BRGH**: Baud Rate speed selection
0: Low speed baud rate
1: High speed baud rate
The bit named BRGH selects the high or low speed mode of the Baud Rate Generator. This bit, together with the value placed in the baud rate register BRG, controls the Baud Rate of the UART. If this bit is equal to "1", the high speed mode is selected. If the bit is equal to "0", the low speed mode is selected.

Bit 4 **ADDEN**: Address detect function enable control
0: Address detect function is disabled
1: Address detect function is enabled
The bit named ADDEN is the address detect function enable control bit. When this bit is equal to "1", the address detect function is enabled. When it occurs, if the 8th bit, which corresponds to TXRX7 if BNO=0 or the 9th bit, which corresponds to RX8 if BNO=1, has a value of "1", then the received word will be identified as an address, rather than data. If the corresponding interrupt is enabled, an interrupt request will be generated each time the received word has the address bit set, which is the 8th or 9th bit depending on the value of BNO. If the address bit known as the 8th or 9th bit of the received word is "0" with the address detect function being enabled, an interrupt will not be generated and the received data will be discarded.

Bit 3 **WAKE**: RX/TX pin wake-up UART function enable control
0: RX/TX pin wake-up UART function is disabled
1: RX/TX pin wake-up UART function is enabled
This bit is used to control the wake-up UART function when a falling edge on the RX/TX pin occurs. Note that this bit is only available when the UART clock (f_H) is switched off. There will be no RX/TX pin wake-up UART function if the UART clock (f_H) exists. If the WAKE bit is set to 1 as the UART clock (f_H) is switched off, a UART wake-up request will be initiated when a falling edge on the RX/TX pin occurs. When this request happens and the corresponding interrupt is enabled, an RX/TX pin wake-up UART interrupt will be generated to inform the MCU to wake up the UART function by switching on the UART clock (f_H) via the application program. Otherwise, the UART function can not resume even if there is a falling edge on the RX/TX pin when the WAKE bit is cleared to 0.

Bit 2 **RIE**: Receiver interrupt enable control
0: Receiver related interrupt is disabled
1: Receiver related interrupt is enabled
This bit enables or disables the receiver interrupt. If this bit is equal to "1" and when the receiver overrun flag OERR or receive data available flag RXIF is set, the UART interrupt request flag will be set. If this bit is equal to "0", the UART interrupt request flag will not be influenced by the condition of the OERR or RXIF flags.

Bit 1 **TIIE**: Transmitter Idle interrupt enable control
0: Transmitter idle interrupt is disabled
1: Transmitter idle interrupt is enabled
This bit enables or disables the transmitter idle interrupt. If this bit is equal to "1" and when the transmitter idle flag TIDLE is set, due to a transmitter idle condition, the UART interrupt request flag will be set. If this bit is equal to "0", the UART interrupt request flag will not be influenced by the condition of the TIDLE flag.

Bit 0 **TEIE**: Transmitter Empty interrupt enable control
0: Transmitter empty interrupt is disabled
1: Transmitter empty interrupt is enabled
This bit enables or disables the transmitter empty interrupt. If this bit is equal to "1" and when the transmitter empty flag TXIF is set, due to a transmitter empty condition, the UART interrupt request flag will be set. If this bit is equal to "0", the UART interrupt request flag will not be influenced by the condition of the TXIF flag.

• **UCR3 Register**

The UCR3 register is used to enable the UART Single Wire Mode communication. As the name suggests in the single wire mode the UART communication can be implemented in one single line, RX/TX, together with the control of the RXEN and TXEN bits in the UCR2 register.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SWM
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	0

Bit 7~1 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 0 **SWM**: Single Wire Mode enable control
0: Disable, the RX/TX pin is used as UART receiver function only
1: Enable, the RX/TX pin can be used as UART receiver or transmitter function controlled by the RXEN and TXEN bits

Note that when the Single Wire Mode is enabled, if both the RXEN and TXEN bits are high, the RX/TX pin will only be used as UART receiver input.

• **TXR_RXR Register**

The TXR_RXR register is the data register which is used to store the data to be transmitted on the TX pin or being received from the RX/TX pin.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	TXRX7	TXRX6	TXRX5	TXRX4	TXRX3	TXRX2	TXRX1	TXRX0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

"x": unknown

Bit 7~0 **TXRX7~TXRX0**: UART Transmit/Receive Data bit 7~bit 0

• **BRG Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	BRG7	BRG6	BRG5	BRG4	BRG3	BRG2	BRG1	BRG0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

"x": unknown

Bit 7~0 **BRG7~BRG0**: Baud Rate values

By programming the BRGH bit in UCR2 Register which allows selection of the related formula described above and programming the required value in the BRG register, the required baud rate can be setup.

Note: Baud rate=f_H/[64×(N+1)] if BRGH=0;
Baud rate=f_H/[16×(N+1)] if BRGH=1.

Baud Rate Generator

To setup the speed of the serial data communication, the UART function contains its own dedicated baud rate generator. The baud rate is controlled by its own internal free running 8-bit timer, the period of which is determined by two factors. The first of these is the value placed in the baud rate register BRG and the second is the value of the BRGH bit with the control register UCR2. The BRGH bit decides if the baud rate generator is to be used in a high speed mode or low speed mode, which in turn determines the formula that is used to calculate the baud rate. The value N in the BRG register which is used in the following baud rate calculation formula determines the division factor. Note that N is the decimal value placed in the BRG register and has a range of between 0 and 255.

UCR2 BRGH Bit	0	1
Baud Rate (BR)	$f_H/[64\times(N+1)]$	$f_H/[16\times(N+1)]$

By programming the BRGH bit which allows selection of the related formula and programming the required value in the BRG register, the required baud rate can be setup. Note that because the actual baud rate is determined using a discrete value, N, placed in the BRG register, there will be an error associated between the actual and requested value. The following example shows how the BRG register value N and the error value can be calculated.

Calculating the Baud Rate and Error Values

For a clock frequency of 4MHz, and with BRGH cleared to zero determine the BRG register value N, the actual baud rate and the error value for a desired baud rate of 4800.

From the above table the desired baud rate $BR=f_H/[64\times(N+1)]$

Re-arranging this equation gives $N=[f_H/(BR\times64)]-1$

Giving a value for $N=[4000000/(4800\times64)]-1=12.0208$

To obtain the closest value, a decimal value of 12 should be placed into the BRG register. This gives an actual or calculated baud rate value of $BR=4000000/[64\times(12+1)]=4808$

Therefore the error is equal to (4808-4800)/4800=0.16%.

UART Setup and Control

For data transfer, the UART function utilizes a non-return-to-zero, more commonly known as NRZ, format. This is composed of one start bit, eight or nine data bits, and one or two stop bits. Parity is supported by the UART hardware, and can be setup to be even, odd or no parity. For the most common data format, 8 data bits along with no parity and one stop bit, denoted as 8, N, 1, is used as the default setting, which is the setting at power-on. The number of data bits and stop bits, along with the parity, are setup by programming the corresponding BNO, PRT, PREN, and STOPS bits in the UCR1 register. The baud rate used to transmit and receive data is setup using the internal 8-bit baud rate generator, while the data is transmitted and received LSB first. Although the UART transmitter and receiver are functionally independent, they both use the same data format and baud rate. In all cases stop bits will be used for data transmission.

Enabling/Disabling the UART Interface

The basic on/off function of the internal UART function is controlled using the UARTEN bit in the UCR1 register. If the UARTEN, TXEN and RXEN bits are set, then these two UART pins will act as normal TX output pin and RX/TX input pin respectively. If no data is being transmitted on the TX pin, then it will default to a logic high value.

Clearing the UARTEN bit will disable the TX and RX/TX pins and allow these two pins to be used as normal I/O or other pin-shared functional pins. When the UART function is disabled the buffer will be reset to an empty condition, at the same time discarding any remaining residual data. Disabling the UART will also reset the error and status flags with bits TXEN, RXEN, TXBRK, RXIF, OERR, FERR, PERR and NF being cleared while bits TIDLE, TXIF and RIDLE will be set. The remaining control bits in the UCR1, UCR2, UCR3 and BRG registers will remain unaffected. If the UARTEN bit in the UCR1 register is cleared while the UART is active, then all pending transmissions and receptions will be immediately suspended and the UART will be reset to a condition as defined above. If the UART is then subsequently re-enabled, it will restart again in the same configuration.

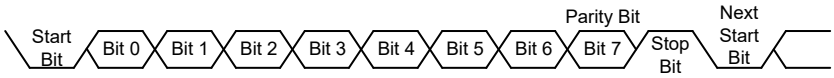
Data, Parity and Stop Bit Selection

The format of the data to be transferred is composed of various factors such as data bit length, parity on/off, parity type, address bits and the number of stop bits. These factors are determined by the setup of various bits within the UCR1 register. The BNO bit controls the number of data bits which can be set to either 8 or 9, the PRT bit controls the choice of odd or even parity, the PREN bit controls the parity on/off function and the STOPS bit decides whether one or two stop bits are to be used. The following table shows various formats for data transmission. The address bit, which is the MSB of the data byte, identifies the frame as an address character or data if the address detect function is enabled. The number of stop bits, which can be either one or two, is independent of the data length and is only used for the transmitter. There is only one stop bit for the receiver.

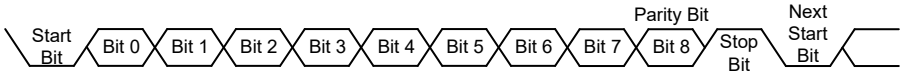
Start Bit	Data Bits	Address Bit	Parity Bit	Stop Bit
Example of 8-bit Data Formats				
1	8	0	0	1
1	7	0	1	1
1	7	1	0	1
Example of 9-bit Data Formats				
1	9	0	0	1
1	8	0	1	1
1	8	1	0	1

Transmitter Receiver Data Format

The following diagram shows the transmit and receive waveforms for both 8-bit and 9-bit data formats.



8-bit Data Format



9-bit Data Format

UART Transmitter

Data word lengths of either 8 or 9 bits can be selected by programming the BNO bit in the UCR1 register. When BNO bit is set, the word length will be set to 9 bits. In this case the 9th bit, which is the MSB, needs to be stored in the TX8 bit in the UCR1 register. At the transmitter core lies the Transmitter Shift Register, more commonly known as the TSR, whose data is obtained from the transmit data register, which is known as the TXR_RXR register. The data to be transmitted is loaded into this TXR_RXR register by the application program. The TSR register is not written to with new data until the stop bit from the previous transmission has been sent out. As soon as this stop bit has been transmitted, the TSR can then be loaded with new data from the TXR_RXR register, if it is available. It should be noted that the TSR register, unlike many other registers, is not directly mapped into the Data Memory area and as such is not available to the application program for direct read/write operations. An actual transmission of data will normally be enabled when the TXEN bit is set, but the data will not be transmitted until the TXR_RXR register has been loaded with data and the baud rate generator has defined a shift clock source. However, the transmission can also be initiated by first loading data into the TXR_RXR register, after which the TXEN bit can be set. When a transmission of data begins, the TSR is normally empty, in which case a transfer to the TXR_RXR register will result in an immediate transfer to the TSR. If during a transmission the TXEN bit is cleared, the transmission will immediately cease and the transmitter will be reset. The

TX output pin can then be configured as the I/O or other pin-shared function by configuring the corresponding pin-shared control bits.

Transmitting Data

When the UART is transmitting data, the data is shifted on the TX pin from the shift register, with the least significant bit first. In the transmit mode, the TXR_RXR register forms a buffer between the internal bus and the transmitter shift register. It should be noted that if 9-bit data format has been selected, then the MSB will be taken from the TX8 bit in the UCR1 register. The steps to initiate a data transfer can be summarized as follows:

- Make the correct selection of the BNO, PRT, PREN and STOPS bits to define the required word length, parity type and number of stop bits.
- Setup the BRG register to select the desired baud rate.
- Set the TXEN bit to ensure that the TX pin is used as a UART transmitter pin.
- Access the USR register and write the data that is to be transmitted into the TXR_RXR register. Note that this step will clear the TXIF bit.

This sequence of events can now be repeated to send additional data.

It should be noted that when TXIF=0, data will be inhibited from being written to the TXR_RXR register. Clearing the TXIF flag is always achieved using the following software sequence:

1. A USR register access
2. A TXR_RXR register write execution

The read-only TXIF flag is set by the UART hardware and if set indicates that the TXR_RXR register is empty and that other data can now be written into the TXR_RXR register without overwriting the previous data. If the TEIE bit is set, then the TXIF flag will generate an interrupt.

During a data transmission, a write instruction to the TXR_RXR register will place the data into the TXR_RXR register, which will be copied to the shift register at the end of the present transmission. When there is no data transmission in progress, a write instruction to the TXR_RXR register will place the data directly into the shift register, resulting in the commencement of data transmission, and the TXIF bit being immediately set. When a frame transmission is complete, which happens after stop bits are sent or after the break frame, the TIDLE bit will be set. To clear the TIDLE bit the following software sequence is used:

1. A USR register access
2. A TXR_RXR register write execution

Note that both the TXIF and TIDLE bits are cleared by the same software sequence.

Transmitting Break

If the TXBRK bit is set high and the state keeps for a time of greater than $[(BRG+1)\times t_H]$ while TIDLE=1, then break characters will be sent on the next transmission. Break character transmission consists of a start bit, followed by 13×N '0' bits and stop bits, where N=1, 2, etc. If a break character is to be transmitted then the TXBRK bit must be first set by the application program, and then cleared to generate the stop bits. Transmitting a break character will not generate a transmit interrupt. Note that a break condition length is at least 13 bits long. If the TXBRK bit is continually kept at a logic high level, then the transmitter circuitry will transmit continuous break characters. After the application program has cleared the TXBRK bit, the transmitter will finish transmitting the last break character and subsequently send out one or two stop bits. The automatic logic highs at the end of the last break character will ensure that the start bit of the next frame is recognized.

UART Receiver

The UART is capable of receiving word lengths of either 8 or 9 bits. If the BNO bit is set, the word length will be set to 9 bits with the MSB being stored in the RX8 bit of the UCR1 register. At the receiver core lies the Receive Serial Shift Register, commonly known as the RSR. The data which is received on the RX/TX pin is sent to the data recovery block. The data recovery block operating speed is 16 times that of the baud rate, while the main receive serial shifter operates at the baud rate. After the RX/TX pin is sampled for the stop bit, the received data in RSR is transferred to the receive data register, if the register is empty. The data which is received on the external RX/TX pin is sampled three times by a majority detect circuit to determine the logic level that has been placed onto the RX/TX pin. It should be noted that the RSR register, unlike many other registers, is not directly mapped into the Data Memory area and as such is not available to the application program for direct read/write operations.

Receiving Data

When the UART receiver is receiving data, the data is serially shifted in on the external RX/TX pin, LSB first. In the read mode, the TXR_RXR register forms a buffer between the internal bus and the receiver shift register. The TXR_RXR register is a two byte deep FIFO data buffer, where two bytes can be held in the FIFO while a third byte can continue to be received. Note that the application program must ensure that the data is read from TXR_RXR before the third byte has been completely shifted in, otherwise this third byte will be discarded and an overrun error OERR will be subsequently indicated. The steps to initiate a data transfer can be summarized as follows:

- Make the correct selection of BNO, PRT and PREN bits to define the word length, parity type.
- Setup the BRG register to select the desired baud rate.
- Set the RXEN bit to ensure that the RX/TX pin is used as a UART receiver pin.

At this point the receiver will be enabled which will begin to look for a start bit.

When a character is received the following sequence of events will occur:

- The RXIF bit in the USR register will be set when the TXR_RXR register has data available. There will be at most one more character available before an overrun error occurs.
- When the contents of the shift register have been transferred to the TXR_RXR register, then if the RIE bit is set, an interrupt will be generated.
- If during reception, a frame error, noise error, parity error, or an overrun error has been detected, then the error flags can be set.

The RXIF bit can be cleared using the following software sequence:

1. A USR register access
2. A TXR_RXR register read execution

Receiving Break

Any break character received by the UART will be managed as a framing error. The receiver will count and expect a certain number of bit times as specified by the values programmed into the BNO bit plus one stop bit. If the break is much longer than 13 bit times, the reception will be considered as complete after the number of bit times specified by BNO plus one stop bit. The RXIF bit is set, FERR is set, zeros are loaded into the receive data register, interrupts are generated if appropriate and the RIDLE bit is set. A break is regarded as a character that contains only zeros with the FERR flag set. If a long break signal has been detected, the receiver will regard it as a data frame including a start bit, data bits and the invalid stop bit and the FERR flag will be set. The receiver must wait for a valid stop bit before looking for the next start bit. The receiver will not make the assumption that

the break condition on the line is the next start bit. The break character will be loaded into the buffer and no further data will be received until stop bits are received. It should be noted that the RIDLE read only flag will go high when the stop bits have not yet been received. The reception of a break character on the UART registers will result in the following:

- The framing error flag, FERR, will be set.
- The receive data register, TXR_RXR, will be cleared.
- The OERR, NF, PERR, RIDLE or RXIF flags will possibly be set.

Idle Status

When the receiver is reading data, which means it will be in between the detection of a start bit and the reading of a stop bit, the receiver status flag in the USR register, otherwise known as the RIDLE flag, will have a zero value. In between the reception of a stop bit and the detection of the next start bit, the RIDLE flag will have a high value, which indicates the receiver is in an idle condition.

Receiver Interrupt

The read only receive interrupt flag RXIF in the USR register is set by an edge generated by the receiver. An interrupt is generated if RIE=1, when a word is transferred from the Receive Shift Register, RSR, to the Receive Data Register, TXR_RXR. An overrun error can also generate an interrupt if RIE=1.

Managing Receiver Errors

Several types of reception errors can occur within the UART module, the following section describes the various types and how they are managed by the UART.

Overrun Error – OERR

The TXR_RXR register is composed of a two byte deep FIFO data buffer, where two bytes can be held in the FIFO register, while a third byte can continue to be received. Before this third byte has been entirely shifted in, the data should be read from the TXR_RXR register. If this is not done, the overrun error flag OERR will be consequently indicated.

In the event of an overrun error occurring, the following will happen:

- The OERR flag in the USR register will be set.
- The TXR_RXR contents will not be lost.
- The shift register will be overwritten.
- An interrupt will be generated if the RIE bit is set.

The OERR flag can be cleared by an access to the USR register followed by a read to the TXR_RXR register.

Noise Error – NF

Over-sampling is used for data recovery to identify valid incoming data and noise. If noise is detected within a frame the following will occur:

- The read only noise flag, NF, in the USR register will be set on the rising edge of the RXIF bit.
- Data will be transferred from the Shift register to the TXR_RXR register.
- No interrupt will be generated. However, this bit rises at the same time as the RXIF bit which itself generates an interrupt.

Note that the NF flag is reset by a USR register read operation followed by a TXR_RXR register read operation.

Framing Error – FERR

The read only framing error flag, FERR, in the USR register, is set if a zero is detected instead of stop bits. If two stop bits are selected, both stop bits must be high; otherwise the FERR flag will be set. The FERR flag and the received data will be recorded in the USR and TXR_RXR registers respectively, and the flag is cleared in any reset.

Parity Error – PERR

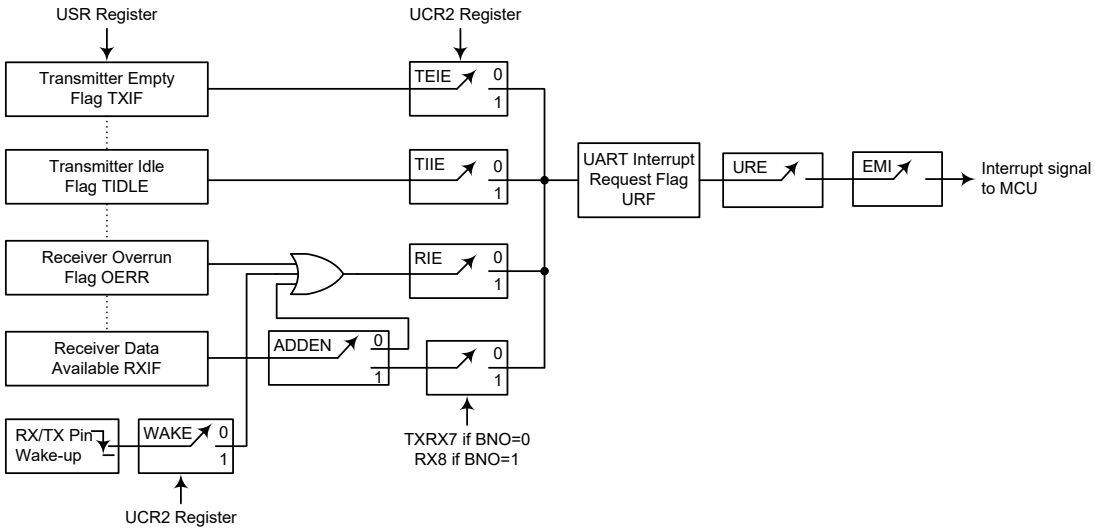
The read only parity error flag, PERR, in the USR register, is set if the parity of the received word is incorrect. This error flag is only applicable if the parity is enabled, PREN=1, and if the parity type, odd or even is selected. The read only PERR flag and the received data will be recorded in the USR and TXR_RXR registers respectively. It is cleared on any reset, it should be noted that the flags, FERR and PERR, in the USR register should first be read by the application program before reading the data word.

UART Interrupt Structure

Several individual UART conditions can generate a UART interrupt. When these conditions exist, a low pulse will be generated to get the attention of the microcontroller. These conditions are a transmitter data register empty, transmitter idle, receiver data available, receiver overrun, address detect and an RX/TX pin wake-up. When any of these conditions are created, if the global interrupt enable bit and its corresponding interrupt control bit are enabled and the stack is not full, the program will jump to its corresponding interrupt vector where it can be serviced before returning to the main program. Four of these conditions have the corresponding USR register flags which will generate a UART interrupt if its associated interrupt enable control bit in the UCR2 register is set. The two transmitter interrupt conditions have their own corresponding enable control bits, while the two receiver interrupt conditions have a shared enable control bit. These enable bits can be used to mask out individual UART interrupt sources.

The address detect condition, which is also a UART interrupt source, does not have an associated flag, but will generate a UART interrupt when an address detect condition occurs if its function is enabled by setting the ADDEN bit in the UCR2 register. An RX/TX pin wake-up, which is also a UART interrupt source, does not have an associated flag, but will generate a UART interrupt if the UART clock (f_H) source is switched off and the WAKE and RIE bits in the UCR2 register are set when a falling edge on the RX/TX pin occurs. Note that in the event of an RX/TX wake-up interrupt occurring, there will be a certain period of delay, commonly known as the System Start-up Time, for the oscillator to restart and stabilize before the system resumes normal operation.

Note that the USR register flags are read only and cannot be cleared or set by the application program, neither will they be cleared when the program jumps to the corresponding interrupt servicing routine, as is the case for some of the other interrupts. The flags will be cleared automatically when certain actions are taken by the UART, the details of which are given in the UART register section. The overall UART interrupt can be disabled or enabled by the related interrupt enable control bits in the interrupt control registers of the microcontroller to decide whether the interrupt requested by the UART module is masked out or allowed.



UART Interrupt Structure

Address Detect Mode

Setting the Address Detect Mode bit, ADDEN, in the UCR2 register, enables this special mode. If this bit is enabled then an additional qualifier will be placed on the generation of a Receiver Data Available interrupt, which is requested by the RXIF flag. If the ADDEN bit is enabled, then when data is available, an interrupt will only be generated, if the highest received bit has a high value. Note that the URE and EMI interrupt enable bits must also be enabled for correct interrupt generation. This highest address bit is the 9th bit if BNO=1 or the 8th bit if BNO=0. If this bit is high, then the received word will be defined as an address rather than data. A Data Available interrupt will be generated every time the last bit of the received word is set. If the ADDEN bit is not enabled, then a Receiver Data Available interrupt will be generated each time the RXIF flag is set, irrespective of the data last bit status. The address detect mode and parity enable are mutually exclusive functions. Therefore, if the address detect mode is enabled, then to ensure correct operation, the parity function should be disabled by resetting the parity enable bit PREN to zero.

ADDEN	9th bit if BNO=1 8th bit if BNO=0	UART Interrupt Generated
0	0	√
	1	√
1	0	×
	1	√

ADDEN Bit Function

UART Power Down and Wake-up

When the UART clock, f_H, is switched off, the UART will cease to function. If the MCU switches off the UART clock, f_H, and enters the power down mode while a transmission is still in progress, then the transmission will be paused until the UART clock source derived from the microcontroller is activated. In a similar way, if the MCU switches off the UART clock f_H and enters the IDLE or SLEEP mode by executing the "HALT" instruction while receiving data, then the reception of data will likewise be paused. When the MCU enters the IDLE or SLEEP mode, note that the USR, UCR1, UCR2, UCR3, TXR_RXR as well as the BRG register will not be affected. It is recommended to make sure first that the UART data transmission or reception has been finished before the microcontroller enters the IDLE or SLEEP mode.

The UART function contains a receiver RX/TX pin wake-up function, which is enabled or disabled by the WAKE bit in the UCR2 register. If this bit, along with the UART enable bit, UARTEN, the receiver enable bit, RXEN and the receiver interrupt bit, RIE, are all set when the MCU enters the power down mode with the UART clock f_H being switched off, then a falling edge on the RX/TX pin will trigger an RX/TX pin wake-up UART interrupt. Note that as it takes certain system clock cycles after a wake-up, before normal microcontroller operation resumes, any data received during this time on the RX/TX pin will be ignored.

For a UART wake-up interrupt to occur, in addition to the bits for the wake-up being set, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, and the UART interrupt enable bit, URE, must be set. If the EMI and URE bits are not set, then only a wake up event will occur and no interrupt will be generated. Note also that as it takes certain system clock cycles after a wake-up before normal microcontroller resumes, the UART interrupt will not be generated until after this time has elapsed.

Low Voltage Detector – LVD

The device has a Low Voltage Detector function, also known as LVD. This enables the device to monitor the power supply voltage, V_{DD}, and provide a warning signal should it fall below a certain level. This function may be especially useful in battery applications where the supply voltage will gradually reduce as the battery ages, as it allows an early warning battery low signal to be generated. The Low Voltage Detector also has the capability of generating an interrupt signal.

LVD Register

The Low Voltage Detector function is controlled using a single register with the name LVDC. Three bits in this register, VLVD2~VLVD0, are used to select one of eight fixed voltages below which a low voltage condition will be determined. A low voltage condition is indicated when the LVDO bit is set. If the LVDO bit is low, this indicates that the V_{DD} voltage is above the preset low voltage value. The LVDEN bit is used to control the overall on/off function of the low voltage detector. Setting the bit high will enable the low voltage detector. Clearing the bit to zero will switch off the internal low voltage detector circuits. As the low voltage detector will consume a certain amount of power, it may be desirable to switch off the circuit when not in use, an important consideration in power sensitive battery powered applications.

- **LVDC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	LVDO	LVDEN	VBGEN	VLVD2	VLVD1	VLVD0
R/W	—	—	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 5 **LVDO**: LVD Output Flag
0: No Low Voltage Detected
1: Low Voltage Detected

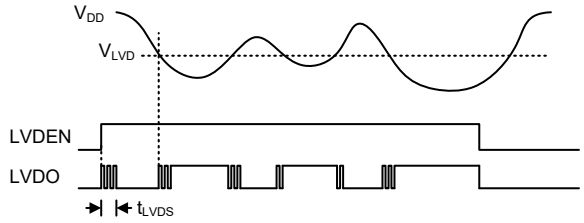
Bit 4 **LVDEN**: Low Voltage Detector Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 3 **VBGEN**: Bandgap Buffer Control
0: Disable
1: Enable
Note that the Bandgap circuit is enabled when the LVD or the LVR function is enabled or when the VBGEN bit is set high.

Bit 2~0 **VLVD2~VLVD0**: LVD Voltage Selection
000: 2.0V
001: 2.2V
010: 2.4V
011: 2.7V
100: 3.0V
101: 3.3V
110: 3.6V
111: 4.0V

LVD Operation

The Low Voltage Detector function operates by comparing the power supply voltage, V_{DD}, with a pre-specified voltage level stored in the LVDC register. This has a range of 2.0V~4.0V. When the power supply voltage, V_{DD}, falls below this pre-determined value, the LVDO bit will be set high indicating a low power supply voltage condition. When the device is in the SLEEP mode, the low voltage detector will be disabled even if the LVDEN bit is high. After enabling the Low Voltage Detector, a time delay t_{LVDS} should be allowed for the circuitry to stabilise before reading the LVDO bit. Note also that as the V_{DD} voltage may rise and fall rather slowly, at the voltage near that of V_{LVD}, there may be multiple LVDO bit transitions.



LVD Operation

The Low Voltage Detector also has its own interrupt, providing an alternative means of low voltage detection, in addition to polling the LVDO bit. The interrupt will only be generated after a delay of t_{LVD} after the LVDO bit has been set high by a low voltage condition, i.e., V_{DD} falls below the preset LVD voltage. In this case, the LVF interrupt request flag will be set, causing an interrupt to be generated. This will cause the device to wake-up from the IDLE Mode, however if the Low Voltage Detector wake up function is not required then the LVF flag should be first set high before the device enter the IDLE Mode.

Interrupts

Interrupts are an important part of any microcontroller system. When an external event or an internal function such as a Timer Module or an A/D converter requires microcontroller attention, their corresponding interrupt will enforce a temporary suspension of the main program allowing the microcontroller to direct attention to their respective needs. The device contains several external interrupt and internal interrupts functions. The external interrupts are generated by the action of the external INT0~INT1 pins, while the internal interrupts are generated by various internal functions including the TMs, Time Bases, LVD, EEPROM, UART, Power Line Transceiver Comparators and the A/D converter.

Interrupt Registers

Overall interrupt control, which basically means the setting of request flags when certain microcontroller conditions occur and the setting of interrupt enable bits by the application program, is controlled by a series of registers, located in the Special Purpose Data Memory. The registers fall into three categories. The first is the INTC0~INTC3 registers which setup the primary interrupts, the second is the MFI1~MFI4 registers which setup the Multi-function interrupts. Finally, there is an INTEG register which setup the external interrupt trigger edge type.

Each register contains a number of enable bits to enable or disable individual registers as well as interrupt flags to indicate the presence of an interrupt request. The naming convention of these follows a specific pattern. First is listed an abbreviated interrupt type, then the (optional) number of that interrupt followed by either an "E" for enable/disable bit or "F" for request flag.

Function	Enable Bit	Request Flag	Notes
Global	EMI	—	—
PLT Comparators	PLTCnE	PLTCnF	n=0~1
INTn Pin	INTnE	INTnF	n=0~1
UART	URE	URF	—
LVD	LVE	LVF	—
Multi-functions	MFnE	MFnF	n=0~4
A/D Converter	ADE	ADF	—
EEPROM	DEE	DEF	—
PTMn	PTMnPE	PTMnPF	n=0~1
	PTMnAE	PTMnAF	
CTMn	CTMnPE	CTMnPF	n=0~1
	CTMnAE	CTMnAF	
Time Bases	TBnE	TBnF	n=0~1

Interrupt Register Bit Naming Conventions

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
INTEG	—	—	—	—	INT1S1	INT1S0	INT0S1	INT0S0
INTC0	—	INT1F	INT0F	PLTC0F	INT1E	INT0E	PLTC0E	EMI
INTC1	MF1F	MF0F	LVF	URF	MF1E	MF0E	LVE	URE
INTC2	TB0F	MF4F	MF3F	MF2F	TB0E	MF4E	MF3E	MF2E
INTC3	—	—	PLTC1F	TB1F	—	—	PLTC1E	TB1E
MFI0	—	—	DEF	ADF	—	—	DEE	ADE
MFI1	—	—	PTM0AF	PTM0PF	—	—	PTM0AE	PTM0PE
MFI2	—	—	PTM1AF	PTM1PF	—	—	PTM1AE	PTM1PE

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
MFI3	—	—	CTM0AF	CTM0PF	—	—	CTM0AE	CTM0PE
MFI4	—	—	CTM1AF	CTM1PF	—	—	CTM1AE	CTM1PE

Interrupt Register List

- **INTEG Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	INT1S1	INT1S0	INT0S1	INT0S0
R/W	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~4 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 3~2 **INT1S1~INT1S0**: interrupt edge control for INT1 pin
00: Disable
01: Rising edge
10: Falling edge
11: Rising and falling edges

Bit 1~0 **INT0S1~INT0S0**: interrupt edge control for INT0 pin
00: Disable
01: Rising edge
10: Falling edge
11: Rising and falling edges

- **INTC0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	INT1F	INT0F	PLTC0F	INT1E	INT0E	PLTC0E	EMI
R/W	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 6 **INT1F**: INT1 interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 5 **INT0F**: INT0 interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 4 **PLTC0F**: PLT Comparator 0 interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 3 **INT1E**: INT1 interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 2 **INT0E**: INT0 interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 1 **PLTC0E**: PLT Comparator 0 interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 0 **EMI**: Global interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

• **INTC1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	MF1F	MF0F	LVF	URF	MF1E	MF0E	LVE	URE
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 **MF1F**: Multi-function interrupt 1 request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 6 **MF0F**: Multi-function interrupt 0 request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 5 **LVF**: LVD interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 4 **URF**: UART interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 3 **MF1E**: Multi-function interrupt 1 control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 2 **MF0E**: Multi-function interrupt 0 control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 1 **LVE**: LVD interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 0 **URE**: UART interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

• **INTC2 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	TB0F	MF4F	MF3F	MF2F	TB0E	MF4E	MF3E	MF2E
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 **TB0F**: Time Base 0 interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 6 **MF4F**: Multi-function interrupt 4 request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 5 **MF3F**: Multi-function interrupt 3 request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 4 **MF2F**: Multi-function interrupt 2 request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 3 **TB0E**: Time Base 0 interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 2 **MF4E**: Multi-function interrupt 4 control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 1 **MF3E**: Multi-function interrupt 3 control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 0 **MF2E**: Multi-function interrupt 2 control
0: Disable
1: Enable

• **INTC3 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	PLTC1F	TB1F	—	—	PLTC1E	TB1E
R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	0	0	—	—	0	0

Bit 7~6 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 5 **PLTC1F**: PLT Comparator1 interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 4 **TB1F**: Time Base 1 interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 3~2 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 1 **PLTC1E**: PLT Comparator 1 interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 0 **TB1E**: Time Base 1 interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

• **MFI0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	DEF	ADF	—	—	DEE	ADE
R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	0	0	—	—	0	0

Bit 7~6 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 5 **DEF**: Data EEPROM interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 4 **ADF**: A/D Converter interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 3~2 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 1 **DEE**: Data EEPROM interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 0 **ADE**: A/D Converter interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

• **MFI1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	PTM0AF	PTM0PF	—	—	PTM0AE	PTM0PE
R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	0	0	—	—	0	0

Bit 7~6 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 5 **PTM0AF**: PTM0 Comparator A match interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 4 **PTM0PF**: PTM0 Comparator P match interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 3~2 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 1 **PTM0AE**: PTM0 Comparator A match interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 0 **PTM0PE**: PTM0 Comparator P match interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

• **MFI2 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	PTM1AF	PTM1PF	—	—	PTM1AE	PTM1PE
R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	0	0	—	—	0	0

Bit 7~6 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 5 **PTM1AF**: PTM1 Comparator A match interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 4 **PTM1PF**: PTM1 Comparator P match interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 3~2 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 1 **PTM1AE**: PTM1 Comparator A match interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 0 **PTM1PE**: PTM1 Comparator P match interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

• **MFI3 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	CTM0AF	CTM0PF	—	—	CTM0AE	CTM0PE
R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	0	0	—	—	0	0

Bit 7~6 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 5 **CTM0AF**: CTM0 Comparator A match interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 4 **CTM0PF**: CTM0 Comparator P match interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 3~2 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 1 **CTM0AE**: CTM0 Comparator A match interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 0 **CTM0PE**: CTM0 Comparator P match interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

- **MFI4 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	CTM1AF	CTM1PF	—	—	CTM1AE	CTM1PE
R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	0	0	—	—	0	0

Bit 7~6 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 5 **CTM1AF**: CTM1 Comparator A match interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 4 **CTM1PF**: CTM1 Comparator P match interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 3~2 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 1 **CTM1AE**: CTM1 Comparator A match interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 0 **CTM1PE**: CTM1 Comparator P match interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Interrupt Operation

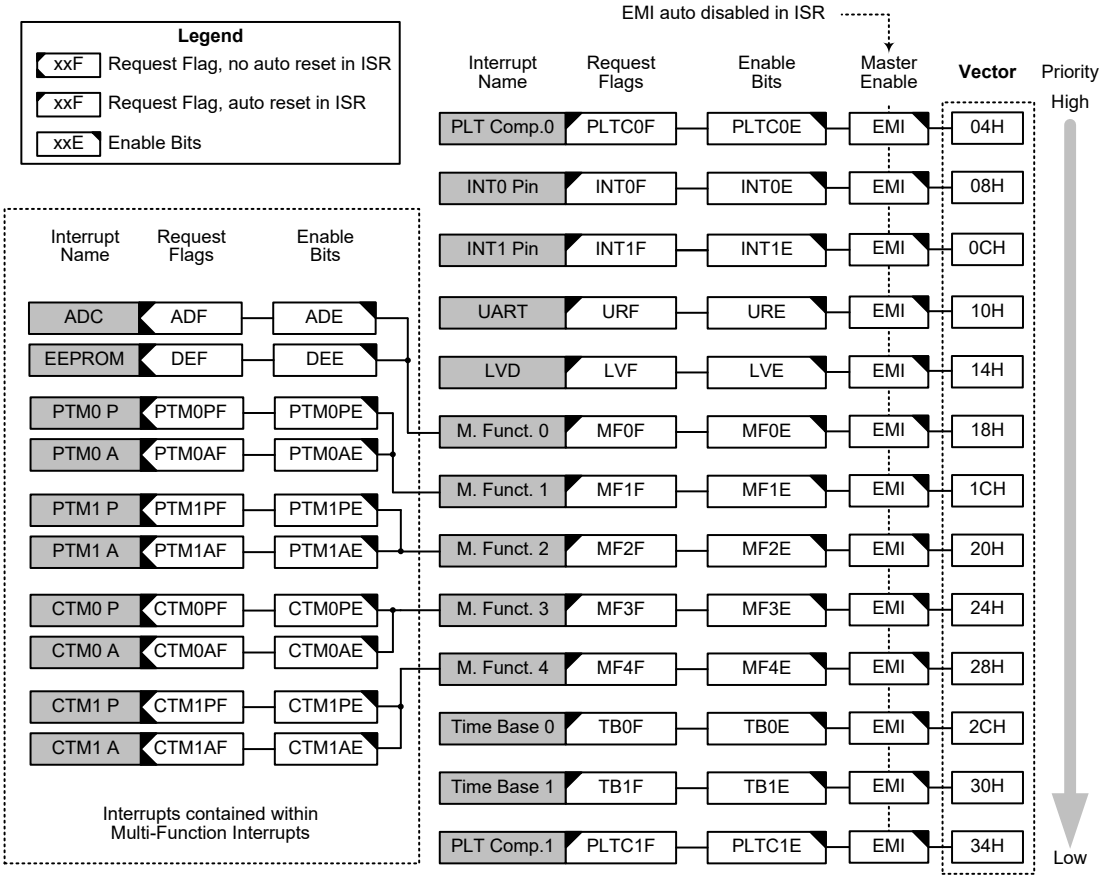
When the conditions for an interrupt event occur, such as a TM Comparator P, Comparator A match or A/D conversion completion etc., the relevant interrupt request flag will be set. Whether the request flag actually generates a program jump to the relevant interrupt vector is determined by the condition of the interrupt enable bit. If the enable bit is set high, then the program will jump to its relevant vector; if the enable bit is zero then although the interrupt request flag is set an actual interrupt will not be generated and the program will not jump to the relevant interrupt vector. The global interrupt enable bit, if cleared to zero, will disable all interrupts.

When an interrupt is generated, the Program Counter, which stores the address of the next instruction to be executed, will be transferred onto the stack. The Program Counter will then be loaded with a new address which will be the value of the corresponding interrupt vector. The microcontroller will then fetch its next instruction from this interrupt vector. The instruction at this vector will usually be a "JMP" which will jump to another section of program which is known as the interrupt service routine. Here is located the code to control the appropriate interrupt. The interrupt service routine must be terminated with a "RETI", which retrieves the original Program Counter address from the stack and allows the microcontroller to continue with normal execution at the point where the interrupt occurred.

The various interrupt enable bits, together with their associated request flags, are shown in the accompanying diagrams with their order of priority. Some interrupt sources have their own

individual vector while others share the same multi-function interrupt vector. Once an interrupt subroutine is serviced, all the other interrupts will be blocked, as the global interrupt enable bit, EMI bit will be cleared automatically. This will prevent any further interrupt nesting from occurring. However, if other interrupt requests occur during this interval, although the interrupt will not be immediately serviced, the request flag will still be recorded.

If an interrupt requires immediate servicing while the program is already in another interrupt service routine, the EMI bit should be set after entering the routine, to allow interrupt nesting. If the stack is full, the interrupt request will not be acknowledged, even if the related interrupt is enabled, until the Stack Pointer is decremented. If immediate service is desired, the stack must be prevented from becoming full. In case of simultaneous requests, the accompanying diagram shows the priority that is applied. All of the interrupt request flags when set will wake-up the device if it is in SLEEP or IDLE Mode, however to prevent a wake-up from occurring the corresponding flag should be set before the device are in SLEEP or IDLE Mode.



Interrupt Structure

PLT Comparator Interrupts

The PLT comparator interrupts are controlled by the Power Line Transceiver circuit internal comparators. A PLT comparator interrupt request will take place when the PLT comparator interrupt request flag, PLTCnF, is set, a situation that will occur when the PLT comparator output bit changes state. To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, and PLT comparator interrupt enable bit, PLTCnE, must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and the PLT comparator inputs generate a comparator output

bit transition, a subroutine call to the PLT comparator interrupt vector, will take place. When the interrupt is serviced, the PLT comparator interrupt request flag, PLTCnF, will be automatically reset and the EMI bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts.

External Interrupts

The external interrupts are controlled by signal transitions on the pins INT0~INT1. An external interrupt request will take place when the external interrupt request flags, INT0F~INT1F, are set, which will occur when a transition, whose type is chosen by the edge select bits, appears on the external interrupt pins. To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, and respective external interrupt enable bit, INT0E~INT1E, must first be set. Additionally, the correct interrupt edge type must be selected using the INTEG register to enable the external interrupt function and to choose the trigger edge type. As the external interrupt pins are pin-shared with I/O pins, they can only be configured as external interrupt pins if their external interrupt enable bit in the corresponding interrupt register has been set and the external interrupt pin is selected by the corresponding pin-shared function selection bits. The pin must also be setup as an input by setting the corresponding bit in the port control register. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and the correct transition type appears on the external interrupt pin, a subroutine call to the external interrupt vector, will take place. When the interrupt is serviced, the external interrupt request flags, INT0F~INT1F, will be automatically reset and the EMI bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts. Note that any pull-high resistor selections on the external interrupt pins will remain valid even if the pin is used as an external interrupt input.

The INTEG register is used to select the type of active edge that will trigger the external interrupt. A choice of either rising or falling or both edge types can be chosen to trigger an external interrupt. Note that the INTEG register can also be used to disable the external interrupt function.

UART Interrupt

Several individual UART conditions can generate a UART interrupt. When these conditions exist, a low pulse will be generated to get the attention of the microcontroller. These conditions are a transmitter data register empty, transmitter idle, receiver data available, receiver overrun, address detect and an RX/TX pin wake-up. To allow the program to branch to the respective interrupt vector addresses, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, and the UART interrupt enable bit, URE, must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and any of these conditions are created, a subroutine call to the UART interrupt vector will take place. When the Interrupt is serviced, the UART interrupt request flag, URF, will be automatically reset and the EMI bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts.

Note that after the interrupt has been serviced, the USR register flags will only be cleared when certain actions are taken by the UART, the details of which are given in the UART section.

LVD Interrupt

An LVD Interrupt request will take place when the LVD Interrupt request flag, LVF, is set, which occurs when the Low Voltage Detector function detects a low power supply voltage. To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, and Low Voltage Interrupt enable bit, LVE, must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and a low voltage condition occurs, a subroutine call to the LVD Interrupt vector, will take place. When the Low Voltage Interrupt is serviced, the LVD Interrupt flag, LVF, will be automatically cleared. The EMI bit will also be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts.

Multi-function Interrupts

Within the device there is five Multi-function interrupts. Unlike the other independent interrupts, these interrupts have no independent source, but rather are formed from other existing interrupt sources, namely the A/D Converter Interrupt, Data EEPROM Interrupt, PTM Interrupts and CTM Interrupts.

A Multi-function interrupt request will take place when any of the Multi-function interrupt request flag, MFnF is set. The Multi-function interrupt flags will be set when any of their included functions generate an interrupt request flag. To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, the Multi-function interrupt enable bit, MFnE, and the original source interrupt enable bit, must first be set. When the Multi-function interrupt is enabled and the stack is not full, and either one of the interrupts contained within each of Multi-function interrupt occurs, a subroutine call to one of the Multi-function interrupt vectors will take place. When the interrupt is serviced, the related Multi-function request flag MFnF will be automatically reset and the EMI bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts.

However, it must be noted that, although the Multi-function interrupt flag will be automatically reset when the interrupt is serviced, the request flags from the original source of the Multi-function interrupt will not be automatically reset and must be manually reset by the application program.

A/D Converter Interrupt

The A/D Converter Interrupt is contained within the Multi-function Interrupt. An A/D Converter Interrupt request will take place when the A/D Converter Interrupt request flag, ADF, is set, which occurs when the A/D conversion process finishes. To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, the A/D Interrupt enable bit, ADE, and the relevant Multi-function Interrupt enable bit, MFnE, must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and the A/D conversion process has ended, a subroutine call to the relevant Multi-function Interrupt vector, will take place. When the interrupt is serviced, the EMI bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts. However, only the Multi-function Interrupt request flag will be automatically cleared. As the A/D Converter Interrupt request flag, ADF, will not be automatically cleared, it has to be cleared by the application program.

EEPROM Interrupt

The EEPROM Interrupt is contained within the Multi-function Interrupt. An EEPROM Interrupt request will take place when the EEPROM Interrupt request flag, DEF, is set, which occurs when an EEPROM Write cycle ends. To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, the EEPROM Interrupt enable bit, DEE, and the relevant Multi-function Interrupt enable bit, MFnE, must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and an EEPROM Write cycle ends, a subroutine call to the Multi-function Interrupt vector will take place. When the EEPROM Interrupt is serviced, the EMI bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts. However, only the Multi-function Interrupt request flag MFnF will be automatically cleared. As the DEF flag will not be automatically cleared, it has to be cleared by the application program.

TM Interrupts

The Compact and Periodic Type TMs each have two interrupts, one comes from the comparator A match situation and the other comes from the comparator P match situation. All of the TM interrupts are contained within the Multi-function Interrupts. For all of the TM types there are two interrupt request flags and two enable control bits. A TM interrupt request will take place when any of the

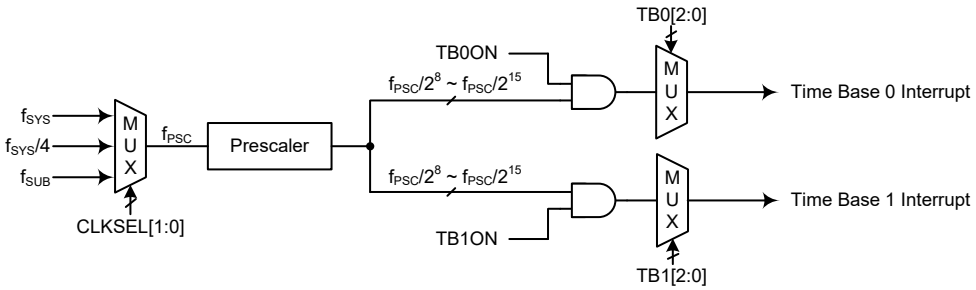
TM request flags are set, a situation which occurs when a TM comparator P or A match situation happens.

To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, the respective TM Interrupt enable bit, and the Multi-function Interrupt enable bit, MFnE, must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and a TM comparator match situation occurs, a subroutine call to the Multi-function Interrupt vector location, will take place. When the TM interrupt is serviced, the EMI bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts, however only the Multi-function Interrupt request flag MFnF will be automatically cleared. As the TM interrupt request flags will not be automatically cleared, they have to be cleared by the application program.

Time Base Interrupts

The function of the Time Base Interrupts is to provide regular time signal in the form of an internal interrupt. They are controlled by the overflow signals from their respective timer functions. When these happens their respective interrupt request flags, TB0F or TB1F will be set. To allow the program to branch to their respective interrupt vector addresses, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI and Time Base enable bits, TB0E or TB1E, must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and the Time Base overflows, a subroutine call to their respective vector locations will take place. When the interrupt is serviced, the respective interrupt request flag, TB0F or TB1F, will be automatically reset and the EMI bit will be cleared to disable other interrupts.

The purpose of the Time Base Interrupt is to provide an interrupt signal at fixed time periods. Its clock source, f_{PSC}, originates from the internal clock source f_{SYS}, $f_{SYS}/4$ or f_{SUB} and then passes through a divider, the division ratio of which is selected by programming the appropriate bits in the TB0C or TB1C register to obtain longer interrupt periods whose value ranges. The clock source which in turn controls the Time Base interrupt period is selected using the CLKSEL1~CLKSEL0 bits in the PSCR register.



Time Base Interrupts

- **PSCR Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	CLKSEL1	CLKSEL0
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	0

Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 1~0 **CLKSEL1~CLKSEL0**: Prescaler clock source selection
00: f_{SYS}
01: $f_{SYS}/4$
1x: f_{SUB}

• **TBnC Register (n=0~1)**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	TBnON	—	—	—	—	TBn2	TBn1	TBn0
R/W	R/W	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	—	—	—	—	0	0	0

Bit 7 **TBnON**: Time Base n Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 6~3 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 2~0 **TBn2~TBn0**: Time Base n Time-out Period Selection
000: $2^8/f_{PSC}$
001: $2^9/f_{PSC}$
010: $2^{10}/f_{PSC}$
011: $2^{11}/f_{PSC}$
100: $2^{12}/f_{PSC}$
101: $2^{13}/f_{PSC}$
110: $2^{14}/f_{PSC}$
111: $2^{15}/f_{PSC}$

Interrupt Wake-up Function

Each of the interrupt functions has the capability of waking up the microcontroller when in the SLEEP or IDLE Mode. A wake-up is generated when an interrupt request flag changes from low to high and is independent of whether the interrupt is enabled or not. Therefore, even though the device is in the SLEEP or IDLE Mode and its system oscillator stopped, situations such as external edge transitions on the external interrupt pins or a low power supply voltage may cause their respective interrupt flag to be set high and consequently generate an interrupt. Care must therefore be taken if spurious wake-up situations are to be avoided. If an interrupt wake-up function is to be disabled, then the corresponding interrupt request flag should be set high before the device enter the SLEEP or IDLE Mode. The interrupt enable bits have no effect on the interrupt wake-up function.

Programming Considerations

By disabling the relevant interrupt enable bits, a requested interrupt can be prevented from being serviced, however, once an interrupt request flag is set, it will remain in this condition in the interrupt register until the corresponding interrupt is serviced or until the request flag is cleared by the application program.

Where a certain interrupt is contained within a Multi-function interrupt, then when the interrupt service routine is executed, as only the Multi-function interrupt request flag, MFnF, will be automatically cleared, the individual request flag for the function needs to be cleared by the application program.

It is recommended that programs do not use the "CALL" instruction within the interrupt service subroutine. Interrupts often occur in an unpredictable manner or need to be serviced immediately. If only one stack is left and the interrupt is not well controlled, the original control sequence will be damaged once a CALL subroutine is executed in the interrupt subroutine.

Every interrupt has the capability of waking up the microcontroller when it is in SLEEP or IDLE Mode, the wake up being generated when the interrupt request flag changes from low to high. If it is required to prevent a certain interrupt from waking up the microcontroller then its respective request flag should be first set high before enter SLEEP or IDLE Mode.

As only the Program Counter is pushed onto the stack, then when the interrupt is serviced, if the contents of the accumulator, status register or other registers are altered by the interrupt service program, their contents should be saved to the memory at the beginning of the interrupt service routine.

To return from an interrupt subroutine, either a RET or RETI instruction may be executed. The RETI instruction in addition to executing a return to the main program also automatically sets the EMI bit high to allow further interrupts. The RET instruction however only executes a return to the main program leaving the EMI bit in its present zero state and therefore disabling the execution of further interrupts.

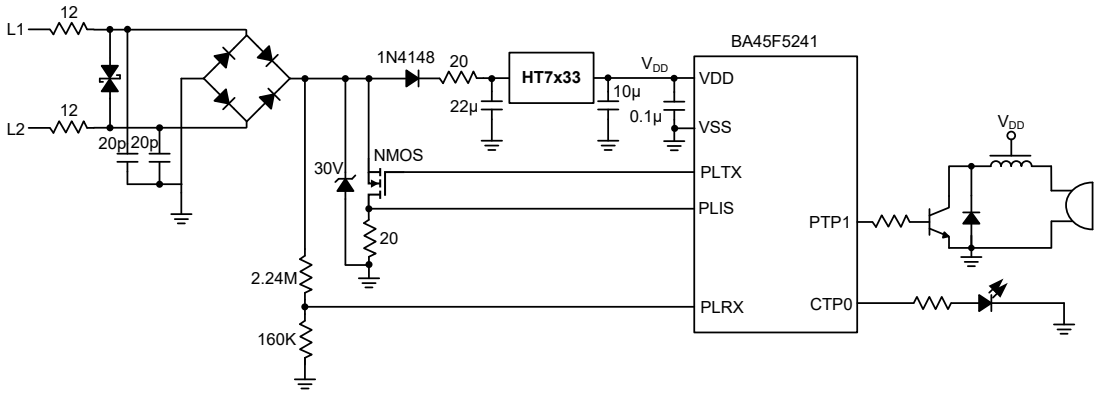
Configuration Options

Configuration options refer to certain options within the MCU that are programmed into the device during the programming process. During the development process, these options are selected using the HT-IDE software development tools. All options must be defined for proper system function, the details of which are shown in the table.

No.	Option
Oscillator Option	
1	HIRC frequency selection – f_{HIRC}: 2MHz, 4MHz or 8MHz

Note: When the HIRC has been configured at a frequency shown in this table, the HIRC1 and HIRC0 bits should also be setup to select the same frequency to achieve the HIRC frequency accuracy specified in the A.C. Characteristics.

Application Circuits



Instruction Set

Introduction

Central to the successful operation of any microcontroller is its instruction set, which is a set of program instruction codes that directs the microcontroller to perform certain operations. In the case of Holtek microcontroller, a comprehensive and flexible set of over 60 instructions is provided to enable programmers to implement their application with the minimum of programming overheads.

For easier understanding of the various instruction codes, they have been subdivided into several functional groupings.

Instruction Timing

Most instructions are implemented within one instruction cycle. The exceptions to this are branch, call, or table read instructions where two instruction cycles are required. One instruction cycle is equal to 4 system clock cycles, therefore in the case of an 8MHz system oscillator, most instructions would be implemented within 0.5μs and branch or call instructions would be implemented within 1μs. Although instructions which require one more cycle to implement are generally limited to the JMP, CALL, RET, RETI and table read instructions, it is important to realize that any other instructions which involve manipulation of the Program Counter Low register or PCL will also take one more cycle to implement. As instructions which change the contents of the PCL will imply a direct jump to that new address, one more cycle will be required. Examples of such instructions would be “CLR PCL” or “MOV PCL, A”. For the case of skip instructions, it must be noted that if the result of the comparison involves a skip operation then this will also take one more cycle, if no skip is involved then only one cycle is required.

Moving and Transferring Data

The transfer of data within the microcontroller program is one of the most frequently used operations. Making use of several kinds of MOV instructions, data can be transferred from registers to the Accumulator and vice-versa as well as being able to move specific immediate data directly into the Accumulator. One of the most important data transfer applications is to receive data from the input ports and transfer data to the output ports.

Arithmetic Operations

The ability to perform certain arithmetic operations and data manipulation is a necessary feature of most microcontroller applications. Within the Holtek microcontroller instruction set are a range of add and subtract instruction mnemonics to enable the necessary arithmetic to be carried out. Care must be taken to ensure correct handling of carry and borrow data when results exceed 255 for addition and less than 0 for subtraction. The increment and decrement instructions such as INC, INCA, DEC and DECA provide a simple means of increasing or decreasing by a value of one of the values in the destination specified.

Logical and Rotate Operation

The standard logical operations such as AND, OR, XOR and CPL all have their own instruction within the Holtek microcontroller instruction set. As with the case of most instructions involving data manipulation, data must pass through the Accumulator which may involve additional programming steps. In all logical data operations, the zero flag may be set if the result of the operation is zero. Another form of logical data manipulation comes from the rotate instructions such as RR, RL, RRC and RLC which provide a simple means of rotating one bit right or left. Different rotate instructions exist depending on program requirements. Rotate instructions are useful for serial port programming applications where data can be rotated from an internal register into the Carry bit from where it can be examined and the necessary serial bit set high or low. Another application which rotate data operations are used is to implement multiplication and division calculations.

Branches and Control Transfer

Program branching takes the form of either jumps to specified locations using the JMP instruction or to a subroutine using the CALL instruction. They differ in the sense that in the case of a subroutine call, the program must return to the instruction immediately when the subroutine has been carried out. This is done by placing a return instruction "RET" in the subroutine which will cause the program to jump back to the address right after the CALL instruction. In the case of a JMP instruction, the program simply jumps to the desired location. There is no requirement to jump back to the original jumping off point as in the case of the CALL instruction. One special and extremely useful set of branch instructions are the conditional branches. Here a decision is first made regarding the condition of a certain data memory or individual bits. Depending upon the conditions, the program will continue with the next instruction or skip over it and jump to the following instruction. These instructions are the key to decision making and branching within the program perhaps determined by the condition of certain input switches or by the condition of internal data bits.

Bit Operations

The ability to provide single bit operations on Data Memory is an extremely flexible feature of all Holtek microcontrollers. This feature is especially useful for output port bit programming where individual bits or port pins can be directly set high or low using either the "SET [m].i" or "CLR [m].i" instructions respectively. The feature removes the need for programmers to first read the 8-bit output port, manipulate the input data to ensure that other bits are not changed and then output the port with the correct new data. This read-modify-write process is taken care of automatically when these bit operation instructions are used.

Table Read Operations

Data storage is normally implemented by using registers. However, when working with large amounts of fixed data, the volume involved often makes it inconvenient to store the fixed data in the Data Memory. To overcome this problem, Holtek microcontrollers allow an area of Program Memory to be setup as a table where data can be directly stored. A set of easy to use instructions provides the means by which this fixed data can be referenced and retrieved from the Program Memory.

Other Operations

In addition to the above functional instructions, a range of other instructions also exist such as the "HALT" instruction for Power-down operations and instructions to control the operation of the Watchdog Timer for reliable program operations under extreme electric or electromagnetic environments. For their relevant operations, refer to the functional related sections.

Instruction Set Summary

The instructions related to the data memory access in the following table can be used when the desired data memory is located in Data Memory sector 0.

Table Conventions

x: Bits immediate data
m: Data Memory address
A: Accumulator
i: 0~7 number of bits
addr: Program memory address

Mnemonic	Description	Cycles	Flag Affected
Arithmetic			
ADD A,[m]	Add Data Memory to ACC	1	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
ADDM A,[m]	Add ACC to Data Memory	1Note	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
ADD A,x	Add immediate data to ACC	1	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
ADC A,[m]	Add Data Memory to ACC with Carry	1	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
ADCM A,[m]	Add ACC to Data memory with Carry	1Note	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
SUB A,x	Subtract immediate data from the ACC	1	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
SUB A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC	1	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
SUBM A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with result in Data Memory	1Note	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
SBC A,x	Subtract immediate data from ACC with Carry	1	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
SBC A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry	1	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
SBCM A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry, result in Data Memory	1Note	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
DAA [m]	Decimal adjust ACC for Addition with result in Data Memory	1Note	C
Logic Operation			
AND A,[m]	Logical AND Data Memory to ACC	1	Z
OR A,[m]	Logical OR Data Memory to ACC	1	Z
XOR A,[m]	Logical XOR Data Memory to ACC	1	Z
ANDM A,[m]	Logical AND ACC to Data Memory	1Note	Z
ORM A,[m]	Logical OR ACC to Data Memory	1Note	Z
XORM A,[m]	Logical XOR ACC to Data Memory	1Note	Z
AND A,x	Logical AND immediate Data to ACC	1	Z
OR A,x	Logical OR immediate Data to ACC	1	Z
XOR A,x	Logical XOR immediate Data to ACC	1	Z
CPL [m]	Complement Data Memory	1Note	Z
CPLA [m]	Complement Data Memory with result in ACC	1	Z
Increment & Decrement			
INCA [m]	Increment Data Memory with result in ACC	1	Z
INC [m]	Increment Data Memory	1Note	Z
DECA [m]	Decrement Data Memory with result in ACC	1	Z
DEC [m]	Decrement Data Memory	1Note	Z
Rotate			
RRA [m]	Rotate Data Memory right with result in ACC	1	None
RR [m]	Rotate Data Memory right	1Note	None
RRCA [m]	Rotate Data Memory right through Carry with result in ACC	1	C
RRC [m]	Rotate Data Memory right through Carry	1Note	C
RLA [m]	Rotate Data Memory left with result in ACC	1	None
RL [m]	Rotate Data Memory left	1Note	None
RLCA [m]	Rotate Data Memory left through Carry with result in ACC	1	C
RLC [m]	Rotate Data Memory left through Carry	1Note	C

Mnemonic	Description	Cycles	Flag Affected
Data Move			
MOV A,[m]	Move Data Memory to ACC	1	None
MOV [m],A	Move ACC to Data Memory	1Note	None
MOV A,x	Move immediate data to ACC	1	None
Bit Operation			
CLR [m].i	Clear bit of Data Memory	1Note	None
SET [m].i	Set bit of Data Memory	1Note	None
Branch Operation			
JMP addr	Jump unconditionally	2	None
SZ [m]	Skip if Data Memory is zero	1Note	None
SZA [m]	Skip if Data Memory is zero with data movement to ACC	1Note	None
SZ [m].i	Skip if bit i of Data Memory is zero	1Note	None
SNZ [m]	Skip if Data Memory is not zero	1Note	None
SNZ [m].i	Skip if bit i of Data Memory is not zero	1Note	None
SIZ [m]	Skip if increment Data Memory is zero	1Note	None
SDZ [m]	Skip if decrement Data Memory is zero	1Note	None
SIZA [m]	Skip if increment Data Memory is zero with result in ACC	1Note	None
SDZA [m]	Skip if decrement Data Memory is zero with result in ACC	1Note	None
CALL addr	Subroutine call	2	None
RET	Return from subroutine	2	None
RET A,x	Return from subroutine and load immediate data to ACC	2	None
RETI	Return from interrupt	2	None
Table Read Operation			
TABRD [m]	Read table (specific page) to TBLH and Data Memory	2Note	None
TABRDL [m]	Read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory	2Note	None
ITABRD [m]	Increment table pointer TBLP first and Read table (specific page) to TBLH and Data Memory	2Note	None
ITABRDL [m]	Increment table pointer TBLP first and Read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory	2Note	None
Miscellaneous			
NOP	No operation	1	None
CLR [m]	Clear Data Memory	1Note	None
SET [m]	Set Data Memory	1Note	None
CLR WDT	Clear Watchdog Timer	1	TO, PDF
SWAP [m]	Swap nibbles of Data Memory	1Note	None
SWAPA [m]	Swap nibbles of Data Memory with result in ACC	1	None
HALT	Enter power down mode	1	TO, PDF

Note: 1. For skip instructions, if the result of the comparison involves a skip then two cycles are required, if no skip takes place only one cycle is required.

2. Any instruction which changes the contents of the PCL will also require 2 cycles for execution.

Extended Instruction Set

The extended instructions are used to support the full range address access for the data memory. When the accessed data memory is located in any data memory sector except sector 0, the extended instruction can be used to directly access the data memory instead of using the indirect addressing access. This can not only reduce the use of Flash memory space but also improve the CPU execution efficiency.

Mnemonic	Description	Cycles	Flag Affected
Arithmetic			
LADD A,[m]	Add Data Memory to ACC	2	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
LADDM A,[m]	Add ACC to Data Memory	2Note	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
LADC A,[m]	Add Data Memory to ACC with Carry	2	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
LADCM A,[m]	Add ACC to Data memory with Carry	2Note	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
LSUB A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC	2	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
LSUBM A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with result in Data Memory	2Note	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
LSBC A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry	2	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
LSBCM A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry, result in Data Memory	2Note	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
LDAA [m]	Decimal adjust ACC for Addition with result in Data Memory	2Note	C
Logic Operation			
LAND A,[m]	Logical AND Data Memory to ACC	2	Z
LOR A,[m]	Logical OR Data Memory to ACC	2	Z
LXOR A,[m]	Logical XOR Data Memory to ACC	2	Z
LANDM A,[m]	Logical AND ACC to Data Memory	2Note	Z
LORM A,[m]	Logical OR ACC to Data Memory	2Note	Z
LXORM A,[m]	Logical XOR ACC to Data Memory	2Note	Z
LCPL [m]	Complement Data Memory	2Note	Z
LCPLA [m]	Complement Data Memory with result in ACC	2	Z
Increment & Decrement			
LINCA [m]	Increment Data Memory with result in ACC	2	Z
LINC [m]	Increment Data Memory	2Note	Z
LDECA [m]	Decrement Data Memory with result in ACC	2	Z
LDEC [m]	Decrement Data Memory	2Note	Z
Rotate			
LRRA [m]	Rotate Data Memory right with result in ACC	2	None
LRR [m]	Rotate Data Memory right	2Note	None
LRRCA [m]	Rotate Data Memory right through Carry with result in ACC	2	C
LRRC [m]	Rotate Data Memory right through Carry	2Note	C
LRLA [m]	Rotate Data Memory left with result in ACC	2	None
LRL [m]	Rotate Data Memory left	2Note	None
LRLCA [m]	Rotate Data Memory left through Carry with result in ACC	2	C
LRLC [m]	Rotate Data Memory left through Carry	2Note	C
Data Move			
LMOV A,[m]	Move Data Memory to ACC	2	None
LMOV [m],A	Move ACC to Data Memory	2Note	None
Bit Operation			
LCLR [m].i	Clear bit of Data Memory	2Note	None
LSET [m].i	Set bit of Data Memory	2Note	None

Mnemonic	Description	Cycles	Flag Affected
Branch			
LSZ [m]	Skip if Data Memory is zero	2Note	None
LSZA [m]	Skip if Data Memory is zero with data movement to ACC	2Note	None
LSNZ [m]	Skip if Data Memory is not zero	2Note	None
LSZ [m].i	Skip if bit i of Data Memory is zero	2Note	None
LSNZ [m].i	Skip if bit i of Data Memory is not zero	2Note	None
LSIZ [m]	Skip if increment Data Memory is zero	2Note	None
LSDZ [m]	Skip if decrement Data Memory is zero	2Note	None
LSIZA [m]	Skip if increment Data Memory is zero with result in ACC	2Note	None
LSDZA [m]	Skip if decrement Data Memory is zero with result in ACC	2Note	None
Table Read			
LTABRD [m]	Read table (specific page) to TBLH and Data Memory	3Note	None
LTABRDL [m]	Read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory	3Note	None
LITABRD [m]	Increment table pointer TBLP first and Read table (specific page) to TBLH and Data Memory	3Note	None
LITABRDL [m]	Increment table pointer TBLP first and Read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory	3Note	None
Miscellaneous			
LCLR [m]	Clear Data Memory	2Note	None
LSET [m]	Set Data Memory	2Note	None
LSWAP [m]	Swap nibbles of Data Memory	2Note	None
LSWAPA [m]	Swap nibbles of Data Memory with result in ACC	2	None

Note: 1. For these extended skip instructions, if the result of the comparison involves a skip then three cycles are required, if no skip takes place two cycles is required.

2. Any extended instruction which changes the contents of the PCL register will also require three cycles for execution.

Instruction Definition

ADC A,[m] Add Data Memory to ACC with Carry

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory, Accumulator and the carry flag are added. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation ACC ← ACC + [m] + C

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC

ADCM A,[m] Add ACC to Data Memory with Carry

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory, Accumulator and the carry flag are added. The result is stored in the specified Data Memory.

Operation [m] ← ACC + [m] + C

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC

ADD A,[m] Add Data Memory to ACC

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator are added. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation ACC ← ACC + [m]

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC

ADD A,x Add immediate data to ACC

Description The contents of the Accumulator and the specified immediate data are added. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation ACC ← ACC + x

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC

ADDM A,[m] Add ACC to Data Memory

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator are added. The result is stored in the specified Data Memory.

Operation [m] ← ACC + [m]

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC

AND A,[m] Logical AND Data Memory to ACC

Description Data in the Accumulator and the specified Data Memory perform a bitwise logical AND operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation ACC ← ACC "AND" [m]

Affected flag(s) Z

AND A,x Logical AND immediate data to ACC

Description Data in the Accumulator and the specified immediate data perform a bit wise logical AND operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation ACC ← ACC "AND" x

Affected flag(s) Z

ANDM A,[m] Logical AND ACC to Data Memory

Description Data in the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator perform a bitwise logical AND operation. The result is stored in the Data Memory.

Operation [m] ← ACC "AND" [m]

Affected flag(s) Z

CALL addr Subroutine call

Description: Unconditionally calls a subroutine at the specified address. The Program Counter then increments by 1 to obtain the address of the next instruction which is then pushed onto the stack. The specified address is then loaded and the program continues execution from this new address. As this instruction requires an additional operation, it is a two cycle instruction.

Operation: Stack ← Program Counter + 1
Program Counter ← addr

Affected flag(s): None

CLR [m] Clear Data Memory

Description: Each bit of the specified Data Memory is cleared to 0.

Operation: [m] ← 00H

Affected flag(s): None

CLR [m].i Clear bit of Data Memory

Description: Bit i of the specified Data Memory is cleared to 0.

Operation: [m].i ← 0

Affected flag(s): None

CLR WDT Clear Watchdog Timer

Description: The TO, PDF flags and the WDT are all cleared.

Operation: WDT cleared
TO ← 0
PDF ← 0

Affected flag(s): TO, PDF

CPL [m] Complement Data Memory

Description: Each bit of the specified Data Memory is logically complemented (1′s complement). Bits which previously contained a 1 are changed to 0 and vice versa.

Operation: [m] ← $\overline{[m]}$

Affected flag(s): Z

CPLA [m] Complement Data Memory with result in ACC

Description: Each bit of the specified Data Memory is logically complemented (1′s complement). Bits which previously contained a 1 are changed to 0 and vice versa. The complemented result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation: ACC ← $\overline{[m]}$

Affected flag(s): Z

DAA [m] Decimal-Adjust ACC for addition with result in Data Memory

Description: Convert the contents of the Accumulator value to a BCD (Binary Coded Decimal) value resulting from the previous addition of two BCD variables. If the low nibble is greater than 9 or if AC flag is set, then a value of 6 will be added to the low nibble. Otherwise the low nibble remains unchanged. If the high nibble is greater than 9 or if the C flag is set, then a value of 6 will be added to the high nibble. Essentially, the decimal conversion is performed by adding 00H, 06H, 60H or 66H depending on the Accumulator and flag conditions. Only the C flag may be affected by this instruction which indicates that if the original BCD sum is greater than 100, it allows multiple precision decimal addition.

Operation: [m] ← ACC + 00H or
[m] ← ACC + 06H or
[m] ← ACC + 60H or
[m] ← ACC + 66H

Affected flag(s): C

DEC [m] Decrement Data Memory

Description Data in the specified Data Memory is decremented by 1.

Operation [m] ← [m] − 1

Affected flag(s) Z

DECA [m] Decrement Data Memory with result in ACC

Description Data in the specified Data Memory is decremented by 1. The result is stored in the Accumulator. The contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation ACC ← [m] − 1

Affected flag(s) Z

HALT Enter power down mode

Description This instruction stops the program execution and turns off the system clock. The contents of the Data Memory and registers are retained. The WDT and prescaler are cleared. The power down flag PDF is set and the WDT time-out flag TO is cleared.

Operation TO ← 0
PDF ← 1

Affected flag(s) TO, PDF

INC [m] Increment Data Memory

Description Data in the specified Data Memory is incremented by 1.

Operation [m] ← [m] + 1

Affected flag(s) Z

INCA [m] Increment Data Memory with result in ACC

Description Data in the specified Data Memory is incremented by 1. The result is stored in the Accumulator. The contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation ACC ← [m] + 1

Affected flag(s) Z

JMP addr Jump unconditionally

Description The contents of the Program Counter are replaced with the specified address. Program execution then continues from this new address. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the new address is loaded, it is a two cycle instruction.

Operation Program Counter ← addr

Affected flag(s) None

MOV A,[m] Move Data Memory to ACC

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are copied to the Accumulator.

Operation ACC ← [m]

Affected flag(s) None

MOV A,x Move immediate data to ACC

Description The immediate data specified is loaded into the Accumulator.

Operation ACC ← x

Affected flag(s) None

MOV [m],A Move ACC to Data Memory

Description The contents of the Accumulator are copied to the specified Data Memory.

Operation [m] ← ACC

Affected flag(s) None

NOP No operation

Description No operation is performed. Execution continues with the next instruction.

Operation No operation

Affected flag(s) None

OR A,[m] Logical OR Data Memory to ACC

Description Data in the Accumulator and the specified Data Memory perform a bitwise logical OR operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation ACC ← ACC ″OR″ [m]

Affected flag(s) Z

OR A,x Logical OR immediate data to ACC

Description Data in the Accumulator and the specified immediate data perform a bitwise logical OR operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation ACC ← ACC ″OR″ x

Affected flag(s) Z

ORM A,[m] Logical OR ACC to Data Memory

Description Data in the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator perform a bitwise logical OR operation. The result is stored in the Data Memory.

Operation [m] ← ACC ″OR″ [m]

Affected flag(s) Z

RET Return from subroutine

Description The Program Counter is restored from the stack. Program execution continues at the restored address.

Operation Program Counter ← Stack

Affected flag(s) None

RET A,x Return from subroutine and load immediate data to ACC

Description The Program Counter is restored from the stack and the Accumulator loaded with the specified immediate data. Program execution continues at the restored address.

Operation Program Counter ← Stack
ACC ← x

Affected flag(s) None

RETI Return from interrupt

Description The Program Counter is restored from the stack and the interrupts are re-enabled by setting the EMI bit. EMI is the master interrupt global enable bit. If an interrupt was pending when the RETI instruction is executed, the pending Interrupt routine will be processed before returning to the main program.

Operation Program Counter ← Stack
EMI ← 1

Affected flag(s) None

RL [m] Rotate Data Memory left

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are rotated left by 1 bit with bit 7 rotated into bit 0.

Operation [m].(i+1) ← [m].i; (i=0~6)
[m].0 ← [m].7

Affected flag(s) None

RLA [m] Rotate Data Memory left with result in ACC

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are rotated left by 1 bit with bit 7 rotated into bit 0. The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation ACC.(i+1) ← [m].i; (i=0~6)
ACC.0 ← [m].7

Affected flag(s) None

RLC [m] Rotate Data Memory left through Carry

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated left by 1 bit. Bit 7 replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into bit 0.

Operation [m].(i+1) ← [m].i; (i=0~6)
[m].0 ← C
C ← [m].7

Affected flag(s) C

RLCA [m] Rotate Data Memory left through Carry with result in ACC

Description Data in the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated left by 1 bit. Bit 7 replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into the bit 0. The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation ACC.(i+1) ← [m].i; (i=0~6)
ACC.0 ← C
C ← [m].7

Affected flag(s) C

RR [m] Rotate Data Memory right

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are rotated right by 1 bit with bit 0 rotated into bit 7.

Operation [m].i ← [m].(i+1); (i=0~6)
[m].7 ← [m].0

Affected flag(s) None

RRA [m] Rotate Data Memory right with result in ACC

Description Data in the specified Data Memory is rotated right by 1 bit with bit 0
rotated into bit 7. The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation ACC.i ← [m].(i+1); (i=0~6)
ACC.7 ← [m].0

Affected flag(s) None

RRC [m] Rotate Data Memory right through Carry

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated right by 1 bit. Bit 0 replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into bit 7.

Operation [m].i ← [m].(i+1); (i=0~6)
[m].7 ← C
C ← [m].0

Affected flag(s) C

RRCA [m] Rotate Data Memory right through Carry with result in ACC

Description: Data in the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated right by 1 bit. Bit 0 replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into bit 7. The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation:
ACC.i ← [m].(i+1); (i=0~6)
ACC.7 ← C
C ← [m].0

Affected flag(s): C

SBC A,[m] Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry

Description: The contents of the specified Data Memory and the complement of the carry flag are subtracted from the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Accumulator. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.

Operation: $ACC \leftarrow ACC - [m] - \overline{C}$

Affected flag(s): OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ

SBC A, x Subtract immediate data from ACC with Carry

Description: The immediate data and the complement of the carry flag are subtracted from the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Accumulator. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.

Operation: $ACC \leftarrow ACC - [m] - \overline{C}$

Affected flag(s): OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ

SBCM A,[m] Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry and result in Data Memory

Description: The contents of the specified Data Memory and the complement of the carry flag are subtracted from the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Data Memory. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.

Operation: $[m] \leftarrow ACC - [m] - \overline{C}$

Affected flag(s): OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ

SDZ [m] Skip if decrement Data Memory is 0

Description: The contents of the specified Data Memory are first decremented by 1. If the result is 0 the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation:
[m] ← [m] − 1
Skip if [m]=0

Affected flag(s): None

SDZA [m] Skip if decrement Data Memory is zero with result in ACC

Description: The contents of the specified Data Memory are first decremented by 1. If the result is 0, the following instruction is skipped. The result is stored in the Accumulator but the specified Data Memory contents remain unchanged. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0, the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation:
ACC ← [m] − 1
Skip if ACC=0

Affected flag(s): None

SET [m] Set Data Memory

Description Each bit of the specified Data Memory is set to 1.

Operation [m] ← FFH

Affected flag(s) None

SET [m].i Set bit of Data Memory

Description Bit i of the specified Data Memory is set to 1.

Operation [m].i ← 1

Affected flag(s) None

SIZ [m] Skip if increment Data Memory is 0

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are first incremented by 1. If the result is 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation [m] ← [m] + 1
Skip if [m]=0

Affected flag(s) None

SIZA [m] Skip if increment Data Memory is zero with result in ACC

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are first incremented by 1. If the result is 0, the following instruction is skipped. The result is stored in the Accumulator but the specified Data Memory contents remain unchanged. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation ACC ← [m] + 1
Skip if ACC=0

Affected flag(s) None

SNZ [m].i Skip if Data Memory is not 0

Description If the specified Data Memory is not 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation Skip if [m].i ≠ 0

Affected flag(s) None

SNZ [m] Skip if Data Memory is not 0

Description If the specified Data Memory is not 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation Skip if [m]≠ 0

Affected flag(s) None

SUB A,[m] Subtract Data Memory from ACC

Description The specified Data Memory is subtracted from the contents of the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Accumulator. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.

Operation ACC ← ACC − [m]

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ

SUBM A,[m] Subtract Data Memory from ACC with result in Data Memory

Description The specified Data Memory is subtracted from the contents of the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Data Memory. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.

Operation [m] ← ACC − [m]

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ

SUB A,x Subtract immediate data from ACC

Description The immediate data specified by the code is subtracted from the contents of the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Accumulator. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.

Operation ACC ← ACC − x

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ

SWAP [m] Swap nibbles of Data Memory

Description The low-order and high-order nibbles of the specified Data Memory are interchanged.

Operation [m].3~[m].0 ↔ [m].7~[m].4

Affected flag(s) None

SWAPA [m] Swap nibbles of Data Memory with result in ACC

Description The low-order and high-order nibbles of the specified Data Memory are interchanged. The result is stored in the Accumulator. The contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation ACC.3~ACC.0 ← [m].7~[m].4
ACC.7~ACC.4 ← [m].3~[m].0

Affected flag(s) None

SZ [m] Skip if Data Memory is 0

Description If the contents of the specified Data Memory is 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation Skip if [m]=0

Affected flag(s) None

SZA [m] Skip if Data Memory is 0 with data movement to ACC

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are copied to the Accumulator. If the value is zero, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation ACC ← [m]
Skip if [m]=0

Affected flag(s) None

SZ [m].i Skip if bit i of Data Memory is 0

Description If bit i of the specified Data Memory is 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0, the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation Skip if [m].i=0

Affected flag(s) None

TABRD [m] Read table (specific page) to TBLH and Data Memory

Description The low byte of the program code (specific page) addressed by the table pointer (TBLP and TBHP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.

Operation [m] ← program code (low byte)
TBLH ← program code (high byte)

Affected flag(s) None

TABRDL [m] Read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory

Description The low byte of the program code (last page) addressed by the table pointer (TBLP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.

Operation [m] ← program code (low byte)
TBLH ← program code (high byte)

Affected flag(s) None

ITABRD [m] Increment table pointer low byte first and read table (specific page) to TBLH and Data Memory

Description Increment table pointer low byte, TBLP, first and then the program code (specific page) addressed by the table pointer (TBHP and TBLP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.

Operation [m] ← program code (low byte)
TBLH ← program code (high byte)

Affected flag(s) None

ITABRDL [m] Increment table pointer low byte first and read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory

Description Increment table pointer low byte, TBLP, first and then the low byte of the program code (last page) addressed by the table pointer (TBLP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.

Operation [m] ← program code (low byte)
TBLH ← program code (high byte)

Affected flag(s) None

XOR A,[m] Logical XOR Data Memory to ACC

Description Data in the Accumulator and the specified Data Memory perform a bitwise logical XOR operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation ACC ← ACC ″XOR″ [m]

Affected flag(s) Z

XORM A,[m] Logical XOR ACC to Data Memory

Description Data in the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator perform a bitwise logical XOR operation. The result is stored in the Data Memory.

Operation [m] ← ACC ″XOR″ [m]

Affected flag(s) Z

XOR A,x Logical XOR immediate data to ACC

Description Data in the Accumulator and the specified immediate data perform a bitwise logical XOR operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation ACC ← ACC ″XOR″ x

Affected flag(s) Z

Extended Instruction Definition

The extended instructions are used to directly access the data stored in any data memory sections.

LADC A,[m] Add Data Memory to ACC with Carry

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory, Accumulator and the carry flag are added. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation ACC ← ACC + [m] + C

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC

LADCM A,[m] Add ACC to Data Memory with Carry

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory, Accumulator and the carry flag are added. The result is stored in the specified Data Memory.

Operation [m] ← ACC + [m] + C

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC

LADD A,[m] Add Data Memory to ACC

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator are added. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation ACC ← ACC + [m]

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC

LADDM A,[m] Add ACC to Data Memory

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator are added. The result is stored in the specified Data Memory.

Operation [m] ← ACC + [m]

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC

LAND A,[m] Logical AND Data Memory to ACC

Description Data in the Accumulator and the specified Data Memory perform a bitwise logical AND operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation ACC ← ACC ″AND″ [m]

Affected flag(s) Z

LANDM A,[m] Logical AND ACC to Data Memory

Description Data in the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator perform a bitwise logical AND operation. The result is stored in the Data Memory.

Operation [m] ← ACC ″AND″ [m]

Affected flag(s) Z

LCLR [m] Clear Data Memory

Description Each bit of the specified Data Memory is cleared to 0.

Operation [m] ← 00H

Affected flag(s) None

LCLR [m].i Clear bit of Data Memory

Description Bit i of the specified Data Memory is cleared to 0.

Operation [m].i ← 0

Affected flag(s) None

LCPL [m] Complement Data Memory

Description Each bit of the specified Data Memory is logically complemented (1′s complement). Bits which previously contained a 1 are changed to 0 and vice versa.

Operation $[m] \leftarrow \overline{[m]}$

Affected flag(s) Z

LCPLA [m] Complement Data Memory with result in ACC

Description Each bit of the specified Data Memory is logically complemented (1′s complement). Bits which previously contained a 1 are changed to 0 and vice versa. The complemented result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation $ACC \leftarrow \overline{[m]}$

Affected flag(s) Z

LDAA [m] Decimal-Adjust ACC for addition with result in Data Memory

Description Convert the contents of the Accumulator value to a BCD (Binary Coded Decimal) value resulting from the previous addition of two BCD variables. If the low nibble is greater than 9 or if AC flag is set, then a value of 6 will be added to the low nibble. Otherwise the low nibble remains unchanged. If the high nibble is greater than 9 or if the C flag is set, then a value of 6 will be added to the high nibble. Essentially, the decimal conversion is performed by adding 00H, 06H, 60H or 66H depending on the Accumulator and flag conditions. Only the C flag may be affected by this instruction which indicates that if the original BCD sum is greater than 100, it allows multiple precision decimal addition.

Operation $[m] \leftarrow ACC + 00H$ or
$[m] \leftarrow ACC + 06H$ or
$[m] \leftarrow ACC + 60H$ or
$[m] \leftarrow ACC + 66H$

Affected flag(s) C

LDEC [m] Decrement Data Memory

Description Data in the specified Data Memory is decremented by 1.

Operation $[m] \leftarrow [m] - 1$

Affected flag(s) Z

LDECA [m] Decrement Data Memory with result in ACC

Description Data in the specified Data Memory is decremented by 1. The result is stored in the Accumulator. The contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation $ACC \leftarrow [m] - 1$

Affected flag(s) Z

LINC [m] Increment Data Memory

Description Data in the specified Data Memory is incremented by 1.

Operation $[m] \leftarrow [m] + 1$

Affected flag(s) Z

LINCA [m] Increment Data Memory with result in ACC

Description Data in the specified Data Memory is incremented by 1. The result is stored in the Accumulator. The contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation $ACC \leftarrow [m] + 1$

Affected flag(s) Z

LMOV A,[m] Move Data Memory to ACC

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are copied to the Accumulator.

Operation ACC ← [m]

Affected flag(s) None

LMOV [m],A Move ACC to Data Memory

Description The contents of the Accumulator are copied to the specified Data Memory.

Operation [m] ← ACC

Affected flag(s) None

LOR A,[m] Logical OR Data Memory to ACC

Description Data in the Accumulator and the specified Data Memory perform a bitwise logical OR operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation ACC ← ACC ″OR″ [m]

Affected flag(s) Z

LORM A,[m] Logical OR ACC to Data Memory

Description Data in the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator perform a bitwise logical OR operation. The result is stored in the Data Memory.

Operation [m] ← ACC ″OR″ [m]

Affected flag(s) Z

LRL [m] Rotate Data Memory left

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are rotated left by 1 bit with bit 7 rotated into bit 0.

Operation [m].(i+1) ← [m].i; (i=0~6)
[m].0 ← [m].7

Affected flag(s) None

LRLA [m] Rotate Data Memory left with result in ACC

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are rotated left by 1 bit with bit 7 rotated into bit 0. The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation ACC.(i+1) ← [m].i; (i=0~6)
ACC.0 ← [m].7

Affected flag(s) None

LRLC [m] Rotate Data Memory left through Carry

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated left by 1 bit. Bit 7 replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into bit 0.

Operation [m].(i+1) ← [m].i; (i=0~6)
[m].0 ← C
C ← [m].7

Affected flag(s) C

LRLCA [m] Rotate Data Memory left through Carry with result in ACC

Description Data in the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated left by 1 bit. Bit 7 replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into the bit 0. The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation ACC.(i+1) ← [m].i; (i=0~6)
ACC.0 ← C
C ← [m].7

Affected flag(s) C

LRR [m] Rotate Data Memory right

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are rotated right by 1 bit with bit 0 rotated into bit 7.

Operation [m].i ← [m].(i+1); (i=0~6)
[m].7 ← [m].0

Affected flag(s) None

LRRA [m] Rotate Data Memory right with result in ACC

Description Data in the specified Data Memory is rotated right by 1 bit with bit 0 rotated into bit 7. The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation ACC.i ← [m].(i+1); (i=0~6)
ACC.7 ← [m].0

Affected flag(s) None

LRRC [m] Rotate Data Memory right through Carry

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated right by 1 bit. Bit 0 replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into bit 7.

Operation [m].i ← [m].(i+1); (i=0~6)
[m].7 ← C
C ← [m].0

Affected flag(s) C

LRRCA [m] Rotate Data Memory right through Carry with result in ACC

Description Data in the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated right by 1 bit. Bit 0 replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into bit 7. The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation ACC.i ← [m].(i+1); (i=0~6)
ACC.7 ← C
C ← [m].0

Affected flag(s) C

LSBC A,[m] Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory and the complement of the carry flag are subtracted from the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Accumulator. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.

Operation ACC ← ACC − [m] − $\overline{C}$

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ

LSBCM A,[m] Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry and result in Data Memory

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory and the complement of the carry flag are subtracted from the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Data Memory. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.

Operation [m] ← ACC − [m] − $\overline{C}$

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ

LSDZ [m] Skip if decrement Data Memory is 0

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are first decremented by 1. If the result is 0 the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation [m] ← [m] − 1
Skip if [m]=0

Affected flag(s) None

LSDZA [m] Skip if decrement Data Memory is zero with result in ACC

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are first decremented by 1. If the result is 0, the following instruction is skipped. The result is stored in the Accumulator but the specified Data Memory contents remain unchanged. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is not 0, the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation ACC ← [m] − 1
Skip if ACC=0

Affected flag(s) None

LSET [m] Set Data Memory

Description Each bit of the specified Data Memory is set to 1.

Operation [m] ← FFH

Affected flag(s) None

LSET [m].i Set bit of Data Memory

Description Bit i of the specified Data Memory is set to 1.

Operation [m].i ← 1

Affected flag(s) None

LSIZ [m] Skip if increment Data Memory is 0

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are first incremented by 1. If the result is 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation [m] ← [m] + 1
Skip if [m]=0

Affected flag(s) None

LSIZA [m] Skip if increment Data Memory is zero with result in ACC

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are first incremented by 1. If the result is 0, the following instruction is skipped. The result is stored in the Accumulator but the specified Data Memory contents remain unchanged. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation ACC ← [m] + 1
Skip if ACC=0

Affected flag(s) None

LSNZ [m].i Skip if Data Memory is not 0

Description If the specified Data Memory is not 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation Skip if [m].i ≠ 0

Affected flag(s) None

LSNZ [m] Skip if Data Memory is not 0

Description If the content of the specified Data Memory is not 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation Skip if [m] ≠ 0

Affected flag(s) None

LSUB A,[m] Subtract Data Memory from ACC

Description The specified Data Memory is subtracted from the contents of the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Accumulator. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.

Operation ACC ← ACC − [m]

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ

LSUBM A,[m] Subtract Data Memory from ACC with result in Data Memory

Description The specified Data Memory is subtracted from the contents of the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Data Memory. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.

Operation [m] ← ACC − [m]

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ

LSWAP [m] Swap nibbles of Data Memory

Description The low-order and high-order nibbles of the specified Data Memory are interchanged.

Operation [m].3~[m].0 ↔ [m].7~[m].4

Affected flag(s) None

LSWAPA [m] Swap nibbles of Data Memory with result in ACC

Description The low-order and high-order nibbles of the specified Data Memory are interchanged. The result is stored in the Accumulator. The contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation ACC.3~ACC.0 ← [m].7~[m].4
ACC.7~ACC.4 ← [m].3~[m].0

Affected flag(s) None

LSZ [m] Skip if Data Memory is 0

Description If the contents of the specified Data Memory is 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation Skip if [m]=0

Affected flag(s) None

LSZA [m] Skip if Data Memory is 0 with data movement to ACC

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are copied to the Accumulator. If the value is zero, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation ACC ← [m]
Skip if [m]=0

Affected flag(s) None

LSZ [m].i Skip if bit i of Data Memory is 0

Description If bit i of the specified Data Memory is 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is not 0, the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation Skip if [m].i=0

Affected flag(s) None

LTABRD [m] Read table (specific page) to TBLH and Data Memory

Description The low byte of the program code (specific page) addressed by the table pointer (TBHP and TBLP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.

Operation [m] ← program code (low byte)
TBLH ← program code (high byte)

Affected flag(s) None

LTABRDL [m] Read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory

Description The low byte of the program code (last page) addressed by the table pointer (TBLP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.

Operation [m] ← program code (low byte)
TBLH ← program code (high byte)

Affected flag(s) None

LITABRD [m] Increment table pointer low byte first and read table (specific page) to TBLH and Data Memory

Description Increment table pointer low byte, TBLP, first and then the program code (specific page) addressed by the table pointer (TBHP and TBLP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.

Operation [m] ← program code (low byte)
TBLH ← program code (high byte)

Affected flag(s) None

LITABRDL [m] Increment table pointer low byte first and read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory

Description Increment table pointer low byte, TBLP, first and then the low byte of the program code (last page) addressed by the table pointer (TBLP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.

Operation [m] ← program code (low byte)
TBLH ← program code (high byte)

Affected flag(s) None

LXOR A,[m] Logical XOR Data Memory to ACC

Description Data in the Accumulator and the specified Data Memory perform a bitwise logical XOR operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation ACC ← ACC ″XOR″ [m]

Affected flag(s) Z

LXORM A,[m] Logical XOR ACC to Data Memory

Description Data in the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator perform a bitwise logical XOR operation. The result is stored in the Data Memory.

Operation [m] ← ACC ″XOR″ [m]

Affected flag(s) Z

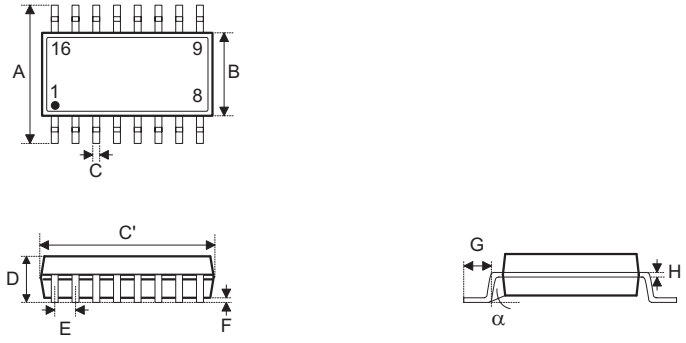
Package Information

Note that the package information provided here is for consultation purposes only. As this information may be updated at regular intervals users are reminded to consult the Holtek website for the latest version of the Package/Carton Information.

Additional supplementary information with regard to packaging is listed below. Click on the relevant section to be transferred to the relevant website page.

- Package Information (include Outline Dimensions, Product Tape and Reel Specifications)
- The Operation Instruction of Packing Materials
- Carton information

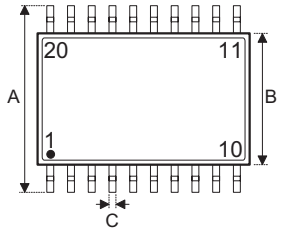
16-pin NSOP (150mil) Outline Dimensions

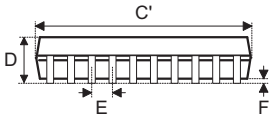


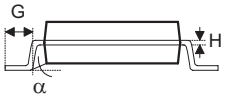
Symbol	Dimensions in inch		
	Min.	Nom.	Max.
A	—	0.236 BSC	—
B	—	0.154 BSC	—
C	0.012	—	0.020
C’	—	0.390 BSC	—
D	—	—	0.069
E	—	0.050 BSC	—
F	0.004	—	0.010
G	0.016	—	0.050
H	0.004	—	0.010
α	0°	—	8°

Symbol	Dimensions in mm		
	Min.	Nom.	Max.
A	—	6.00 BSC	—
B	—	3.90 BSC	—
C	0.31	—	0.51
C’	—	9.90 BSC	—
D	—	—	1.75
E	—	1.27 BSC	—
F	0.10	—	0.25
G	0.40	—	1.27
H	0.10	—	0.25
α	0°	—	8°

20-pin SSOP (150mil) Outline Dimensions







Symbol	Dimensions in inch		
	Min.	Nom.	Max.
A	—	0.236 BSC	—
B	—	0.154 BSC	—
C	0.008	—	0.012
C’	—	0.341 BSC	—
D	—	—	0.069
E	—	0.025 BSC	—
F	0.004	—	0.010
G	0.016	—	0.050
H	0.004	—	0.010
α	0°	—	8°

Symbol	Dimensions in mm		
	Min.	Nom.	Max.
A	—	6.00 BSC	—
B	—	3.90 BSC	—
C	0.20	—	0.30
C’	—	8.66 BSC	—
D	—	—	1.75
E	—	0.635 BSC	—
F	0.10	—	0.25
G	0.41	—	1.27
H	0.10	—	0.25
α	0°	—	8°